

GigaDevice Semiconductor Inc.

GD32F3x0
Arm[®] Cortex[®]-M4 32-bit MCU

Firmware Library
User Guide

Revison 1.4

(Dec. 2023)

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	2
List of Figures	5
List of Tables	6
1. Introduction	22
1.1. Rules of User Manual and Firmware Library	22
1.1.1. Peripherals	22
1.1.2. Naming rules	23
2. Firmware Library Overview	24
2.1. File Structure of Firmware Library	24
2.1.1. Examples Folder	25
2.1.2. Firmware Folder	25
2.1.3. Template Folder	25
2.1.4. Utilities Folder	29
2.2. File descriptions of Firmware Library	29
3. Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals	31
3.1. Overview of Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals	31
3.2. ADC	31
3.2.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	31
3.2.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	32
3.3. CEC	55
3.3.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	55
3.3.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	56
3.4. CMP	72
3.4.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	72
3.4.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	72
3.5. CRC	80
3.5.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	80
3.5.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	80
3.6. CTC	88
3.6.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	88
3.6.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	88
3.7. DAC	101
3.7.1. Peripheral register description	101
3.7.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	101

3.8. DBG	116
3.8.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	116
3.8.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	116
3.9. DMA	120
3.9.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	120
3.9.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	121
3.10. EXTI.....	139
3.10.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	139
3.10.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	140
3.11. FMC	147
3.11.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	147
3.11.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	148
3.12. FWDGT.....	166
3.12.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	166
3.12.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	166
3.13. GPIO/APIO	172
3.13.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	172
3.13.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	172
3.14. I2C	182
3.14.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	183
3.14.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	183
3.15. MISC.....	205
3.15.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	205
3.15.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	206
3.16. PMU	212
3.16.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	212
3.16.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	212
3.17. RCU	224
3.17.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	224
3.17.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	225
3.18. RTC	254
3.18.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	255
3.18.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	255
3.19. SPI/I2S.....	275
3.19.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	275
3.19.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	276
3.20. SYSCFG	302
3.20.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	302
3.20.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	302

3.21. TIMER.....	309
3.21.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	309
3.21.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	310
3.22. TSI	367
3.22.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	367
3.22.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	368
3.23. USART.....	389
3.23.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	390
3.23.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	390
3.24. WWDGT.....	435
3.24.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	435
3.24.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	435
3.25. USBFS.....	439
4. Revision history	440

List of Figures

Figure 2-1. File structure of firmware library of GD32F3x0	24
Figure 2-2. Select peripheral example files	26
Figure 2-3. Copy the peripheral example files	27
Figure 2-4. Open the project file	28
Figure 2-5. Configure project files	28
Figure 2-6. Compile-debug-download	29

List of Tables

Table 1-1. Peripherals	22
Table 2-1. Function descriptions of Firmware Library.....	29
Table 3-1. Peripheral function format of Firmware Library.....	31
Table 3-2. ADC Registers	31
Table 3-3. ADC firmware function.....	32
Table 3-4. Function adc_deinit.....	33
Table 3-5. Function adc_enable	33
Table 3-6. Function adc_disable	34
Table 3-7. Function adc_calibration_enable	34
Table 3-8. Function adc_dma_mode_enable	35
Table 3-9. Function adc_dma_mode_disable	35
Table 3-10. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable.....	36
Table 3-11. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable.....	36
Table 3-12. Function adc_vbat_enable	37
Table 3-13. Function adc_vbat_disable	37
Table 3-14. Function adc_discontinuous_mode_config	38
Table 3-15. Function adc_special_function_config	38
Table 3-16. Function adc_data_alignment_config.....	39
Table 3-17. Function adc_channel_length_config.....	40
Table 3-18. Function adc_regular_channel_config	40
Table 3-19. Function adc_inserted_channel_config	41
Table 3-20. Function adc_inserted_channel_offset_config	42
Table 3-21. Function adc_external_trigger_config.....	43
Table 3-22. Function adc_external_trigger_source_config	44
Table 3-23. Function adc_software_trigger_enable	45
Table 3-24. Function adc_regular_data_read	46
Table 3-25. Function adc_inserted_data_read	46
Table 3-26. Function adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable.....	47
Table 3-27. Function adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable	47
Table 3-28. Function adc_watchdog_disable	48
Table 3-29. Function adc_watchdog_threshold_config	48
Table 3-30. Function adc_resolution_config	49
Table 3-31. Function adc_oversample_mode_config	49
Table 3-32. Function adc_oversample_mode_enable	51
Table 3-33. Function adc_oversample_mode_disable	51
Table 3-34. Function adc_flag_get	52
Table 3-35. Function adc_flag_clear	53
Table 3-36. Function adc_interrupt_enable	53
Table 3-37. Function adc_interrupt_disable	54
Table 3-38. Function adc_interrupt_flag_get.....	54

Table 3-39. Function adc_interrupt_flag_clear	55
Table 3-40. CEC Registers	56
Table 3-41. CEC firmware function.....	56
Table 3-42. Function cec_deinit.....	57
Table 3-43. Function cec_init	57
Table 3-44. Function cec_error_config.....	58
Table 3-45. Function cec_enable	59
Table 3-46. Function cec_disable	60
Table 3-47. Function cec_transmission_start	60
Table 3-48. Function cec_transmission_end.....	61
Table 3-49. Function cec_listen_mode_enable	61
Table 3-50. Function cec_listen_mode_disable.....	62
Table 3-51. Function cec_own_address_config	62
Table 3-52. Function cec_sft_config	63
Table 3-53. Function cec_generate_errorbit_config	64
Table 3-54. Function cec_stop_receive_bre_config	65
Table 3-55. Function cec_reception_tolerance_enable	65
Table 3-56. Function cec_reception_tolerance_disable	66
Table 3-57. Function cec_data_send	66
Table 3-58. Function cec_data_receive	67
Table 3-59. Function cec_interrupt_enable	67
Table 3-60. Function cec_interrupt_disable	68
Table 3-61. Function cec_flag_get.....	69
Table 3-62. Function cec_flag_clear	70
Table 3-63. Function cec_interrupt_flag_get.....	70
Table 3-64. Function cec_interrupt_flag_clear.....	71
Table 3-65. CMP registers	72
Table 3-66. CMP firmware function	73
Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum	73
Table 3-68. Function cmp_deinit	73
Table 3-69. Function cmp_mode_init.....	74
Table 3-70. Function cmp_output_init	75
Table 3-71. Function cmp_enable.....	76
Table 3-72. Function cmp_disable.....	77
Table 3-73. Function cmp_switch_enable.....	77
Table 3-74. Function cmp_switch_disable.....	77
Table 3-75. Function cmp_window_enable.....	78
Table 3-76. Function cmp_window_disable.....	78
Table 3-77. Function cmp_lock_enable	79
Table 3-78. Function cmp_output_level_get	79
Table 3-79. CRC Registers	80
Table 3-80. CRC firmware function	80
Table 3-81. Function crc_deinit.....	81
Table 3-82. Function crc_reverse_output_data_enable	81

Table 3-83. Function <code>crc_reverse_output_data_disable</code>	82
Table 3-84. Function <code>crc_data_register_reset</code>	82
Table 3-85. Function <code>crc_data_register_read</code>	83
Table 3-86. Function <code>crc_free_data_register_read</code>	83
Table 3-87. Function <code>crc_free_data_register_write</code>	84
Table 3-88. Function <code>crc_init_data_register_write</code>	84
Table 3-89. Function <code>crc_input_data_reverse_config</code>	85
Table 3-90. Function <code>crc_polynomial_size_set</code>	85
Table 3-91. Function <code>crc_polynomial_set</code>	86
Table 3-92. Function <code>crc_single_data_calculate</code>	87
Table 3-93. Function <code>crc_block_data_calculate</code>	87
Table 3-94. CTC Registers	88
Table 3-95. CTC firmware function	88
Table 3-96. Function <code>ctc_deinit</code>	89
Table 3-97. Function <code>ctc_refsource_polarity_config</code>	89
Table 3-98. Function <code>ctc_refsource_signal_select</code>	90
Table 3-99. Function <code>ctc_refsource_prescaler_config</code>	91
Table 3-100. Function <code>ctc_clock_limit_value_config</code>	91
Table 3-101. Function <code>ctc_counter_reload_value_config</code>	92
Table 3-102. Function <code>ctc_counter_enable</code>	92
Table 3-103. Function <code>ctc_counter_disable</code>	93
Table 3-104. Function <code>ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config</code>	93
Table 3-105. Function <code>ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate</code>	94
Table 3-106. Function <code>ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config</code>	94
Table 3-107. Function <code>ctc_counter_capture_value_read</code>	95
Table 3-108. Function <code>ctc_counter_direction_read</code>	95
Table 3-109. Function <code>ctc_counter_reload_value_read</code>	96
Table 3-110. Function <code>ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read</code>	96
Table 3-111. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_enable</code>	97
Table 3-112. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_disable</code>	98
Table 3-113. Function <code>ctc_flag_get</code>	98
Table 3-114. Function <code>ctc_flag_clear</code>	99
Table 3-115. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_flag_get</code>	99
Table 3-116. Function <code>ctc_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	100
Table 3-117. DAC Registers	101
Table 3-118. DAC firmware functions.....	101
Table 3-119. Function <code>dac_deinit</code>	102
Table 3-120. Function <code>dac_enable</code>	103
Table 3-121. Function <code>dac_disable</code>	103
Table 3-122. Function <code>dac_dma_enable</code>	104
Table 3-123. Function <code>dac_dma_disable</code>	104
Table 3-124. Function <code>dac_output_buffer_enable</code>	105
Table 3-125. Function <code>dac_output_buffer_disable</code>	105
Table 3-126. Function <code>dac_output_value_get</code>	106

Table 3-127. Function dac_data_set	107
Table 3-128. Function dac_trigger_enable.....	107
Table 3-129. Function dac_trigger_disable.....	108
Table 3-130. Function dac_trigger_source_config.....	109
Table 3-131. Function dac_software_trigger_enable	110
Table 3-132. Function dac_wave_mode_config.....	110
Table 3-133. Function dac_lfsr_noise_config	111
Table 3-134. Function dac_triangle_noise_config.....	112
Table 3-135. Function dac_flag_get	112
Table 3-136. Function dac_flag_clear	113
Table 3-137. Function dac_interrupt_enable	113
Table 3-138. Function dac_interrupt_disable	114
Table 3-139. Function dac_interrupt_flag_get.....	115
Table 3-140. Function dac_interrupt_flag_clear	115
Table 3-141. DBG Registers.....	116
Table 3-142. DBG firmware function	116
Table 3-143. Enum dbg_periph_enum	116
Table 3-144. Function dbg_deinit	117
Table 3-145. Function dbg_id_get	117
Table 3-146. Function dbg_low_power_enable.....	118
Table 3-147. Function dbg_low_power_disable.....	119
Table 3-148. Function dbg_periph_enable.....	119
Table 3-149. Function dbg_periph_disable.....	120
Table 3-150. DMA Registers.....	121
Table 3-151. DMA firmware function	121
Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum	122
Table 3-153. Structure dma_parameter_struct.....	122
Table 3-154. Function dma_deinit	122
Table 3-155. Function dma_para_init.....	123
Table 3-156. Function dma_init.....	123
Table 3-157. Function dma_circulation_enable	124
Table 3-158. Function dma_circulation_disable	125
Table 3-159. Function dma_memory_to_memory_enable	125
Table 3-160. Function dma_memory_to_memory_disable	126
Table 3-161. Function dma_channel_enable	127
Table 3-162. Function dma_channel_disable	127
Table 3-163. Function dma_periph_address_config.....	128
Table 3-164. Function dma_memory_address_config.....	128
Table 3-165. Function dma_transfer_number_config	129
Table 3-166. Function dma_transfer_number_get.....	130
Table 3-167. Function dma_priority_config	130
Table 3-168. Function dma_memory_width_config	131
Table 3-169. Function dma_periph_width_config	132
Table 3-170. Function dma_memory_increase_enable	132

Table 3-171. Function <code>dma_memory_increase_disable</code>	133
Table 3-172. Function <code>dma_periph_increase_enable</code>	133
Table 3-173. Function <code>dma_periph_increase_disable</code>	134
Table 3-174. Function <code>dma_transfer_direction_config</code>	134
Table 3-175. Function <code>dma_flag_get</code>	135
Table 3-176. Function <code>dma_flag_clear</code>	136
Table 3-177. Function <code>dma_interrupt_enable</code>	136
Table 3-178. Function <code>dma_interrupt_disable</code>	137
Table 3-179. Function <code>dma_interrupt_flag_get</code>	138
Table 3-180. Function <code>dma_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	138
Table 3-181. EXTI Registers	139
Table 3-182. EXTI firmware function	140
Table 3-183. Enum <code>exti_line_enum</code>	140
Table 3-184. Enum <code>exti_mode_enum</code>	141
Table 3-185. Enum <code>exti_trig_type_enum</code>	141
Table 3-186. Function <code>exti_deinit</code>	141
Table 3-187. Function <code>exti_init</code>	142
Table 3-188. Function <code>exti_interrupt_enable</code>	142
Table 3-189. Function <code>exti_interrupt_disable</code>	143
Table 3-190. Function <code>exti_event_enable</code>	143
Table 3-191. Function <code>exti_event_disable</code>	144
Table 3-192. Function <code>exti_software_interrupt_enable</code>	144
Table 3-193. Function <code>exti_software_interrupt_disable</code>	145
Table 3-194. Function <code>exti_flag_get</code>	145
Table 3-195. Function <code>exti_flag_clear</code>	146
Table 3-196. Function <code>exti_interrupt_flag_get</code>	146
Table 3-197. Function <code>exti_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	147
Table 3-198. FMC Registers	147
Table 3-199. FMC firmware function	148
Table 3-200. Enum <code>fmc_state_enum</code>	149
Table 3-201. Structure <code>ob_parm_struct</code>	149
Table 3-202. Function <code>fmc_unlock</code>	149
Table 3-203. Function <code>fmc_lock</code>	150
Table 3-204. Function <code>fmc_wscnt_set</code>	150
Table 3-205. Function <code>fmc_wscnt_set</code>	151
Table 3-206. Function <code>fmc_wscnt_set</code>	151
Table 3-207. Function <code>fmc_page_erase</code>	152
Table 3-208. Function <code>fmc_mass_erase</code>	152
Table 3-209. Function <code>fmc_word_program</code>	153
Table 3-210. Function <code>fmc_halfword_program</code>	153
Table 3-211. Function <code>fmc_word_reprogram</code>	154
Table 3-212. Function <code>ob_unlock</code>	154
Table 3-213. Function <code>ob_lock</code>	155
Table 3-214. Function <code>ob_reset</code>	155

Table 3-215. Function ob_erase	156
Table 3-216. Function ob_write_protection_enable	156
Table 3-217. Function ob_security_protection_config	157
Table 3-218. Function ob_user_write	157
Table 3-219. Function ob_data_program	158
Table 3-220. Function ob_user_get	159
Table 3-221. Function ob_data_get	159
Table 3-222. Function ob_write_protection_get	159
Table 3-223. Function ob_obstat_plevel_get	160
Table 3-224. Function fmc_interrupt_enable	160
Table 3-225. Function fmc_interrupt_disable	161
Table 3-226. Function fmc_flag_get	162
Table 3-227. Function fmc_flag_clear	162
Table 3-228. Function fmc_interrupt_flag_get	163
Table 3-229. Function fmc_interrupt_flag_clear	163
Table 3-230. Function fmc_state_get	164
Table 3-231. Function fmc_ready_wait	164
Table 3-232. Function ob_parm_get	165
Table 3-233. Function ob_value_modify	165
Table 3-234. FWDGT Registers	166
Table 3-235. FWDGT firmware function	166
Table 3-236. Function fwdgt_write_ensable	167
Table 3-237. Function fwdgt_write_disable	167
Table 3-238. Function fwdgt_enable	168
Table 3-239. Function fwdgt_prescaler_value_config	168
Table 3-240. Function fwdgt_reload_value_config	169
Table 3-241. Function fwdgt_window_value_config	169
Table 3-242. Function fwdgt_counter_reload	170
Table 3-243. Function fwdgt_config	170
Table 3-244. Function fwdgt_flag_get	171
Table 3-245. GPIO Registers	172
Table 3-246. GPIO firmware function	172
Table 3-247. Function gpio_deinit	173
Table 3-248. Function gpio_mode_set	173
Table 3-249. Function gpio_output_options_set	174
Table 3-250. Function gpio_bit_set	175
Table 3-251. Function gpio_bit_reset	176
Table 3-252. Function gpio_bit_write	176
Table 3-253. Function gpio_port_write	177
Table 3-254. Function gpio_input_bit_get	177
Table 3-255. Function gpio_input_port_get	178
Table 3-256. Function gpio_output_bit_get	179
Table 3-257. Function gpio_output_port_get	179
Table 3-258. Function gpio_af_set	180

Table 3-259. Function gpio_pin_lock	181
Table 3-260. Function gpio_bit_toggle	181
Table 3-261. Function gpio_port_toggle	182
Table 3-262. I2C Registers	183
Table 3-263. I2C firmware function	183
Table 3-264. Enum i2c_flag_enum	184
Table 3-265. Enum i2c_interrupt_flag_enum	185
Table 3-266. Enum i2c_interrupt_enum	185
Table 3-267. Function i2c_deinit	185
Table 3-268. Function i2c_clock_config	186
Table 3-269. Function i2c_mode_addr_config	186
Table 3-270. Function i2c_smbus_type_config	187
Table 3-271. Function i2c_ack_config	188
Table 3-272. Function i2c_ackpos_config	188
Table 3-273. Function i2c_master_addressing	189
Table 3-274. Function i2c_dualaddr_enable	190
Table 3-275. Function i2c_dualaddr_disable	190
Table 3-276. Function i2c_enable	191
Table 3-277. Function i2c_disable	191
Table 3-278. Function i2c_start_on_bus	192
Table 3-279. Function i2c_stop_on_bus	192
Table 3-280. Function i2c_data_transmit	193
Table 3-281. Function i2c_data_receive	193
Table 3-282. Function i2c_dma_config	194
Table 3-283. Function i2c_dma_last_transfer_config	195
Table 3-284. Function i2c_stretch_scl_low_config	195
Table 3-285. Function i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config	196
Table 3-286. Function i2c_software_reset_config	196
Table 3-287. Function i2c_pec_config	197
Table 3-288. Function i2c_pec_transfer_config	198
Table 3-289. Function i2c_pec_value_get	198
Table 3-290. Function i2c_smbus_alert_config	199
Table 3-291. Function i2c_smbus_arp_config	199
Table 3-292. Function i2c_flag_get	200
Table 3-293. Function i2c_flag_clear	201
Table 3-294. Function i2c_interrupt_enable	202
Table 3-295. Function i2c_interrupt_disable	203
Table 3-296. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_get	203
Table 3-297. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_clear	204
Table 3-298. NVIC Registers	205
Table 3-299. SysTick Registers	206
Table 3-300. MISC firmware function	207
Table 3-301. Enum IRQn_Type	207
Table 3-302. Function nvic_priority_group_set	208

Table 3-303. Function nvic_irq_enable	208
Table 3-304. Function nvic_irq_disable	209
Table 3-305. Function nvic_vector_table_set	209
Table 3-306. Function system_lowpower_set	210
Table 3-307. Function system_lowpower_reset	211
Table 3-308. Function systick_clksource_set	211
Table 3-309. PMU Registers	212
Table 3-310. PMU firmware function	212
Table 3-311. Function pmu_deinit	213
Table 3-312. Function pmu_lvd_select	213
Table 3-313. Function pmu_ldo_output_select	214
Table 3-314. Function pmu_lvd_disable	215
Table 3-315. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable	215
Table 3-316. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable	216
Table 3-317. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_enable	216
Table 3-318. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_disable	217
Table 3-319. Function pmu_highdriver_switch_select	217
Table 3-320. Function pmu_lowpower_driver_config	218
Table 3-321. Function pmu_normalpower_driver_config	218
Table 3-322. Function pmu_to_sleepmode	219
Table 3-323. Function pmu_to_deepsleepmode	219
Table 3-324. Function pmu_to_standbymode	220
Table 3-325. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_enable	221
Table 3-326. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_disable	221
Table 3-327. Function pmu_backup_write_enable	222
Table 3-328. Function pmu_backup_write_disable	222
Table 3-329. Function pmu_flag_get	223
Table 3-330. Function pmu_flag_clear	223
Table 3-331. RCU Registers	224
Table 3-332. RCU firmware function	225
Table 3-333. Enum rcu_periph_enum	226
Table 3-334. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum	227
Table 3-335. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum	227
Table 3-336. Enum rcu_flag_enum	228
Table 3-337. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum	229
Table 3-338. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum	229
Table 3-339. Enum rcu_int_enum	230
Table 3-340. Enum rcu_adc_clock_enum	230
Table 3-341. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum	231
Table 3-342. Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum	231
Table 3-343. Function rcu_deinit	231
Table 3-344. Function rcu_periph_clock_enable	232
Table 3-345. Function rcu_periph_clock_disable	232
Table 3-346. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable	233

Table 3-347. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable	233
Table 3-348. Function rcu_periph_reset_enable.....	234
Table 3-349. Function rcu_periph_reset_disable	234
Table 3-350. Function rcu_bkp_reset_enable	235
Table 3-351. Function rcu_bkp_reset_disable	235
Table 3-352. Function rcu_system_clock_source_config.....	236
Table 3-353. Function rcu_system_clock_source_get	236
Table 3-354. Function rcu_ahb_clock_config	237
Table 3-355. Function rcu_apb1_clock_config	237
Table 3-356. Function rcu_apb2_clock_config	238
Table 3-357. Function rcu_adc_clock_config.....	238
Table 3-358. Function rcu_usbfs_clock_config	239
Table 3-359. Function rcu_ckout_config.....	240
Table 3-360. Function rcu_pll_preselection_config	241
Table 3-361. Function rcu_pll_config	241
Table 3-362. Function rcu_usart_clock_config	242
Table 3-363. Function rcu_cec_clock_config.....	242
Table 3-364. Function rcu_rtc_clock_config	243
Table 3-365. Function rcu_ck48m_clock_config	244
Table 3-366. Function rcu_hxtal_pdiv_config.....	244
Table 3-367. Function rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config.....	245
Table 3-368. Function rcu_flag_get.....	245
Table 3-369. Function rcu_all_reset_flag_clear	246
Table 3-370. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_get	246
Table 3-371. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_clear	247
Table 3-372. Function rcu_interrupt_enable.....	247
Table 3-373. Function rcu_interrupt_disable.....	248
Table 3-374. Function rcu_osc1_stab_wait	248
Table 3-375. Function rcu_osc1_on	249
Table 3-376. Function rcu_osc1_off.....	249
Table 3-377. Function rcu_osc1_bypass_mode_enable	250
Table 3-378. Function rcu_osc1_bypass_mode_disable	250
Table 3-379. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable	251
Table 3-380. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable	251
Table 3-381. Function rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set.....	252
Table 3-382. Function rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set.....	252
Table 3-383. Function rcu_voltage_key_unlock	253
Table 3-384. Function rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set.....	253
Table 3-385. Function rcu_clock_freq_get.....	254
Table 3-386. RTC Registers	255
Table 3-387. RTC firmware function.....	255
Table 3-388. Structure rtc_parameter_struct.....	256
Table 3-389. Structure rtc_alarm_struct.....	257
Table 3-390. Structure rtc_timestamp_struct	257

Table 3-391. Structure <code>rtc_tamper_struct</code>	257
Table 3-392. Function <code>rtc_deinit</code>	258
Table 3-393. Function <code>rtc_init</code>	258
Table 3-394. Function <code>rtc_init_mode_enter</code>	259
Table 3-395. Function <code>rtc_init_mode_exit</code>	259
Table 3-396. Function <code>rtc_register_sync_wait</code>	260
Table 3-397. Function <code>rtc_current_time_get</code>	260
Table 3-398. Function <code>rtc_subsecond_get</code>	261
Table 3-399. Function <code>rtc_alarm_config</code>	261
Table 3-400. Function <code>rtc_alarm_subsecond_config</code>	262
Table 3-401. Function <code>rtc_alarm_get</code>	263
Table 3-402. Function <code>rtc_alarm_subsecond_get</code>	264
Table 3-403. Function <code>rtc_alarm_enable</code>	264
Table 3-404. Function <code>rtc_alarm_disable</code>	264
Table 3-405. Function <code>rtc_timestamp_enable</code>	265
Table 3-406. Function <code>rtc_timestamp_disable</code>	266
Table 3-407. Function <code>rtc_timestamp_get</code>	266
Table 3-408. Function <code>rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get</code>	267
Table 3-409. Function <code>rtc_tamper_enable</code>	267
Table 3-410. Function <code>rtc_tamper_disable</code>	268
Table 3-411. Function <code>rtc_interrupt_enable</code>	268
Table 3-412. Function <code>rtc_interrupt_disable</code>	269
Table 3-413. Function <code>rtc_flag_get</code>	269
Table 3-414. Function <code>rtc_flag_clear</code>	270
Table 3-415. Function <code>rtc_alter_output_config</code>	271
Table 3-416. Function <code>rtc_calibration_config</code>	271
Table 3-417. Function <code>rtc_hour_adjust</code>	272
Table 3-418. Function <code>rtc_second_adjust</code>	273
Table 3-419. Function <code>rtc_bypass_shadow_enable</code>	273
Table 3-420. Function <code>rtc_bypass_shadow_disable</code>	274
Table 3-421. Function <code>rtc_refclock_detection_enable</code>	274
Table 3-422. Function <code>rtc_refclock_detection_disable</code>	275
Table 3-423. SPI/I2S registers.....	275
Table 3-424. SPI/I2S firmware function.....	276
Table 3-425. Structure <code>spi_parameter_struct</code>	277
Table 3-426. Function <code>spi_i2s_deinit</code>	277
Table 3-427. Function <code>spi_struct_para_init</code>	278
Table 3-428. Function <code>spi_init</code>	279
Table 3-429. Function <code>spi_enable</code>	279
Table 3-430. Function <code>spi_disable</code>	280
Table 3-431. Function <code>i2s_init</code>	280
Table 3-432. Function <code>i2s_psc_config</code>	281
Table 3-433. Function <code>i2s_enable</code>	283
Table 3-434. Function <code>i2s_disable</code>	283

Table 3-435. Function spi_nss_output_enable	284
Table 3-436. Function spi_nss_output_disable	284
Table 3-437. Function spi_nss_internal_high	285
Table 3-438. Function spi_nss_internal_low	285
Table 3-439. Function spi_dma_enable	286
Table 3-440. Function spi_dma_disable	286
Table 3-441. Function spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config	287
Table 3-442. Function spi_bidirectional_transfer_config	288
Table 3-443. Function spi_i2s_data_transmit	288
Table 3-444. Function spi_i2s_data_receive	289
Table 3-445. Function spi_i2s_format_error_clear	289
Table 3-446. Function spi_crc_polynomial_set	290
Table 3-447. Function spi_crc_polynomial_get	290
Table 3-448. Function spi_crc_on	291
Table 3-449. Function spi_crc_off	292
Table 3-450. Function spi_crc_next	292
Table 3-451. Function spi_crc_get	293
Table 3-452. Function spi_crc_error_clear	293
Table 3-453. Function spi_ti_mode_enable	294
Table 3-454. Function spi_ti_mode_disable	294
Table 3-455. Function spi_nssp_mode_enable	295
Table 3-456. Function spi_nssp_mode_disable	295
Table 3-457. Function spi_quad_enable	296
Table 3-458. Function spi_quad_disable	296
Table 3-459. Function spi_quad_write_enable	297
Table 3-460. Function spi_quad_read_enable	297
Table 3-461. Function spi_quad_io23_output_enable	298
Table 3-462. Function spi_quad_io23_output_disable	298
Table 3-463. Function spi_i2s_flag_get	299
Table 3-464. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_enable	300
Table 3-465. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_disable	300
Table 3-466. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get	301
Table 3-467. SYSCFG Registers	302
Table 3-468. SYSCFG firmware function	302
Table 3-469. Function syscfg_deinit	303
Table 3-470. Function syscfg_dma_remap_enable	303
Table 3-471. Function syscfg_dma_remap_disable	304
Table 3-472. Function syscfg_high_current_enable	305
Table 3-473. Function syscfg_high_current_disable	305
Table 3-474. Function syscfg_exti_line_config	306
Table 3-475. Function syscfg_lock_config	306
Table 3-476. Function syscfg_flag_get	307
Table 3-477. Function syscfg_flag_clear	307
Table 3-478. Function syscfg_compensation_config	308

Table 3-479. Function syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get	308
Table 3-480. TIMERx Registers	309
Table 3-481. TIMERx firmware function.....	310
Table 3-482. Structure timer_parameter_struct	313
Table 3-483. Structure timer_break_parameter_struct.....	313
Table 3-484. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct.....	313
Table 3-485. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct.....	314
Table 3-486. Function timer_deinit	314
Table 3-487. Function timer_struct_para_init.....	314
Table 3-488. Function timer_init	315
Table 3-489. Function timer_enable	316
Table 3-490. Function timer_disable	316
Table 3-491. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable	317
Table 3-492. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable	317
Table 3-493. Function timer_update_event_enable	318
Table 3-494. Function timer_update_event_disable	319
Table 3-495. Function timer_counter_alignment	319
Table 3-496. Function timer_counter_up_direction	320
Table 3-497. Function timer_counter_down_direction	320
Table 3-498. Function timer_prescaler_config.....	321
Table 3-499. Function timer_repetition_value_config	322
Table 3-500. Function timer_autoreload_value_config	322
Table 3-501. Function timer_counter_value_config	323
Table 3-502. Function timer_counter_read	323
Table 3-503. Function timer_prescaler_read	324
Table 3-504. Function timer_single_pulse_mode_config	325
Table 3-505. Function timer_update_source_config.....	325
Table 3-506. Function t timer_ocpre_clear_source_config	326
Table 3-507. Function timer_interrupt_enable	327
Table 3-508. Function timer_interrupt_disable	327
Table 3-509. Function timer_interrupt_flag_get.....	328
Table 3-510. Function timer_interrupt_flag_clear.....	329
Table 3-511. Function timer_flag_get.....	330
Table 3-512. Function timer_flag_clear	331
Table 3-513. Function timer_dma_enable	331
Table 3-514. Function timer_dma_disable	332
Table 3-515. Function timer_channel_dma_request_source_select.....	333
Table 3-516. Function timer_dma_transfer_config.....	334
Table 3-517. Function timer_event_software_generate.....	335
Table 3-518. Function timer_break_struct_para_init	336
Table 3-519. Function timer_break_config	337
Table 3-520. Function timer_break_enable	338
Table 3-521. Function timer_break_disable.....	338
Table 3-522. Function timer_automatic_output_enable	339

Table 3-523. Function timer_automatic_output_disable	339
Table 3-524. Function timer_primary_output_config	340
Table 3-525. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_config	340
Table 3-526. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config	341
Table 3-527. Function timer_channel_output_struct_para_init	342
Table 3-528. Function timer_channel_output_config	342
Table 3-529. Function timer_channel_output_mode_config	343
Table 3-530. Function timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config	344
Table 3-531. Function timer_channel_output_shadow_config	345
Table 3-532. Function timer_channel_output_fast_config	346
Table 3-533. Function timer_channel_output_clear_config	347
Table 3-534. Function timer_channel_output_polarity_config	347
Table 3-535. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config	348
Table 3-536. Function timer_channel_output_state_config	349
Table 3-537. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config	350
Table 3-538. Function timer_channel_input_struct_para_init	351
Table 3-539. Function timer_input_capture_config	351
Table 3-540. Function timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config	352
Table 3-541. Function timer_channel_capture_value_register_read	353
Table 3-542. Function timer_input_pwm_capture_config	354
Table 3-543. Function timer_hall_mode_config	355
Table 3-544. Function timer_input_trigger_source_select	355
Table 3-545. Function timer_master_output_trigger_source_select	356
Table 3-546. Function timer_slave_mode_select	357
Table 3-547. Function timer_master_slave_mode_config	358
Table 3-548. Function timer_external_trigger_config	359
Table 3-549. Function timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config	360
Table 3-550. Function timer_internal_clock_config	361
Table 3-551. Function timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config	361
Table 3-552. Function timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config	362
Table 3-553. Function timer_external_clock_mode0_config	363
Table 3-554. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_config	364
Table 3-555. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_disable	365
Table 3-556. Function timer_channel_remap_config	365
Table 3-557. Function timer_write_chxval_register_config	366
Table 3-558. Function timer_output_value_selection_config	367
Table 3-559. TSI Registers	368
Table 3-560. TSI firmware function	368
Table 3-561. Function tsi_deinit	369
Table 3-562. Function tsi_init	370
Table 3-563. Function tsi_enable	371
Table 3-564. Function tsi_disable	372
Table 3-565. Function tsi_sample_pin_enable	372
Table 3-566. Function tsi_sample_pin_disable	373

Table 3-567. Function tsi_channel_pin_enable.....	373
Table 3-568. Function tsi_channel_pin_disable.....	374
Table 3-569. Function tsi_sofeware_mode_config.....	374
Table 3-570. Function tsi_software_start.....	375
Table 3-571. Function tsi_software_stop	375
Table 3-572. Function tsi_hardware_mode_config	376
Table 3-573. Function tsi_pin_mode_config	376
Table 3-574. Function tsi_extend_charge_config.....	377
Table 3-575. Function tsi_pulse_config	378
Table 3-576. Function tsi_max_number_config.....	379
Table 3-577. Function tsi_hysteresis_on	379
Table 3-578. Function tsi_hysteresis_off	380
Table 3-579. Function tsi_analog_on	380
Table 3-580. Function tsi_analog_off.....	381
Table 3-581. Function tsi_group_enable	381
Table 3-582. Function tsi_group_disable.....	382
Table 3-583. Function tsi_group_status_get.....	382
Table 3-584. Function tsi_group0_cycle_get.....	383
Table 3-585. Function tsi_group1_cycle_get.....	384
Table 3-586. Function tsi_group2_cycle_get.....	384
Table 3-587. Function tsi_group3_cycle_get.....	385
Table 3-588. Function tsi_group4_cycle_get.....	385
Table 3-589. Function tsi_group5_cycle_get.....	386
Table 3-590. Function tsi_flag_get	386
Table 3-591. Function tsi_flag_clear	387
Table 3-592. Function tsi_interrupt_enable	387
Table 3-593. Function tsi_interrupt_disable	388
Table 3-594. Function tsi_interrupt_flag_get.....	388
Table 3-595. Function tsi_interrupt_flag_clear	389
Table 3-596. USART Registers	390
Table 3-597. USART firmware function.....	390
Table 3-598. Enum usart_flag_enum.....	392
Table 3-599. Enum usart_interrupt_flag_enum.....	393
Table 3-600. Enum usart_interrupt_enum.....	393
Table 3-601. Enum usart_invert_enum	394
Table 3-602. Function usart_deinit	394
Table 3-603. Function usart_baudrate_set	395
Table 3-604. Function usart_parity_config	395
Table 3-605. Function usart_word_length_set.....	396
Table 3-606. Function usart_stop_bit_set.....	396
Table 3-607. Function usart_enable	397
Table 3-608. Function usart_disable	397
Table 3-609. Function usart_transmit_config.....	398
Table 3-610. Function usart_receive_config	399

Table 3-611. Function usart_data_first_config.....	399
Table 3-612. Function usart_invert_config	400
Table 3-613. Function usart_overrun_enable.....	401
Table 3-614. Function usart_overrun_disable.....	401
Table 3-615. Function usart_oversample_config	402
Table 3-616. Function usart_sample_bit_config.....	402
Table 3-617. Function usart_receiver_timeout_enable.....	403
Table 3-618. Function usart_receiver_timeout_disable.....	403
Table 3-619. Function usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config	404
Table 3-620. Function usart_data_transmit	405
Table 3-621. Function usart_data_receive	405
Table 3-622. Function usart_command_enable	406
Table 3-623. Function usart_address_config	406
Table 3-624. Function usart_address_detection_mode_config	407
Table 3-625. Function usart_mute_mode_enable.....	408
Table 3-626. Function usart_mute_mode_disable.....	408
Table 3-627. Function usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config	409
Table 3-628. Function usart_lin_mode_enable	409
Table 3-629. Function usart_lin_mode_disable	410
Table 3-630. Function usart_lin_break_dection_length_config	410
Table 3-631. Function usart_halfduplex_enable	411
Table 3-632. Function usart_halfduplex_disable	411
Table 3-633. Function usart_clock_enable	412
Table 3-634. Function usart_clock_disable	412
Table 3-635. Function usart_synchronous_clock_config.....	413
Table 3-636. Function usart_guard_time_config	414
Table 3-637. Function usart_smartcard_mode_enable	414
Table 3-638. Function usart_smartcard_mode_disable	415
Table 3-639. Function usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable.....	415
Table 3-640. Function usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable.....	416
Table 3-641. Function usart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable.....	416
Table 3-642. Function usart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable.....	417
Table 3-643. Function usart_smartcard_autoretry_config.....	417
Table 3-644. Function usart_block_length_config	418
Table 3-645. Function usart_irda_mode_enable.....	418
Table 3-646. Function usart_irda_mode_disable.....	419
Table 3-647. Function usart_prescaler_config.....	419
Table 3-648. Function usart_irda_lowpower_config	420
Table 3-649. Function usart_hardware_flow_rts_config	421
Table 3-650. Function usart_hardware_flow_cts_config	421
Table 3-651. Function usart_rs485_driver_enable	422
Table 3-652. Function usart_rs485_driver_disable	422
Table 3-653. Function usart_driver_assertime_config	423
Table 3-654. Function usart_driver_deassertime_config.....	424

Table 3-655. Function usart_depolarity_config	424
Table 3-656. Function usart_dma_receive_config.....	425
Table 3-657. Function usart_dma_transmit_config.....	425
Table 3-658. Function usart_reception_error_dma_enable	426
Table 3-659. Function usart_reception_error_dma_disable	427
Table 3-660. Function usart_wakeup_enable	427
Table 3-661. Function usart_wakeup_disable	428
Table 3-662. Function usart_wakeup_mode_config	428
Table 3-663. Function usart_receive_fifo_enable.....	429
Table 3-664. Function usart_receive_fifo_disable.....	429
Table 3-665. Function usart_receive_fifo_counter_number	430
Table 3-666. Function usart_flag_get	430
Table 3-667. Function usart_flag_clear	431
Table 3-668. Function usart_interrupt_enable	432
Table 3-669. Function usart_interrupt_disable	432
Table 3-670. Function usart_interrupt_flag_get.....	433
Table 3-671. Function usart_interrupt_flag_clear.....	433
Table 3-672. WWDGT Registers	435
Table 3-673. WWDGT firmware function	435
Table 3-674. Function wwdgt_deinit	435
Table 3-675. Function wwdgt_enable	436
Table 3-676. Function wwdgt_counter_update	436
Table 3-677. Function wwdgt_config	437
Table 3-678. Function wwdgt_interrupt_enable	437
Table 3-679. Function wwdgt_flag_get.....	438
Table 3-680. Function wwdgt_flag_clear	438
Table 4-1. Revision history	440

1. Introduction

This manual introduces firmware library of GD32F3x0 devices which are 32-bit microcontrollers based on the ARM processor.

The firmware library is a firmware function package, including program, data structure and macro definitions, all the performance features of peripherals of GD32F3x0 devices are involved in the package. The peripheral driving code and firmware examples on evaluation board are also included in firmware library. Users need not learn each peripherals in details and it's easy to apply a peripheral by using the firmware library. Using firmware library can greatly reduce programming time, thereby reducing development costs.

The driving code of each peripheral is concluded by a group of functions, which describes all the performance features of the peripheral. Users can drive a peripheral by a group of APIs (application programming interface), all the APIs are standardized about the code structure, function name and parameter names.

All the driving source code accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard (example files accord with extended ANSI-C standard), and will not be influenced by differences of IDEs, except the startup files which are written differently according to the IDEs.

The commonly used firmware library includes all the functions of all the peripherals, so the code size and the execution speed may not be the optimal. For most applications, users can use the library functions directly, while for the applications which are strict with the code size and execution speed, the firmware library can be used as the reference resource of how to configure a peripheral, and users adjust the code according to actual needs.

The overall structure of the firmware library user manual is shown as below:

- Rules of user manual and firmware library;
- Firmware library overview;
- Functions and registers descriptions of firmware library.

1.1. Rules of User Manual and Firmware Library

1.1.1. Peripherals

Table 1-1. Peripherals

Peripherals	Descriptions
ADC	Analog-to-digital converter
CEC	HDMI-CEC controller
CMP	Comparator
CRC	CRC calculation unit
CTC	Clock trim controller
DAC	Digital-to-analog converter

Peripherals	Descriptions
DBG	Debug
DMA	Direct memory access controller
EXTI	Interrupt/event controller
FMC	Flash memory controller
FWDGT	Free watchdog timer
GPIO/APIO	General-purpose and alternate-function I/Os
I2C	Inter-integrated circuit interface
MISC	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller
PMU	Power management unit
RCU	Reset and clock unit
RTC	Real-time Clock
SPI/I2S	Serial peripheral interface/Inter-IC sound
SYSCFG	System configuration
TIMER	TIMER
TSI	Touch sensing interface
USART	Universal synchronous/asynchronous receiver /transmitter
WWDGT	Window watchdog timer
USBFS	Universal serial bus full-speed interface

1.1.2. Naming rules

The firmware library naming rules are shown as below:

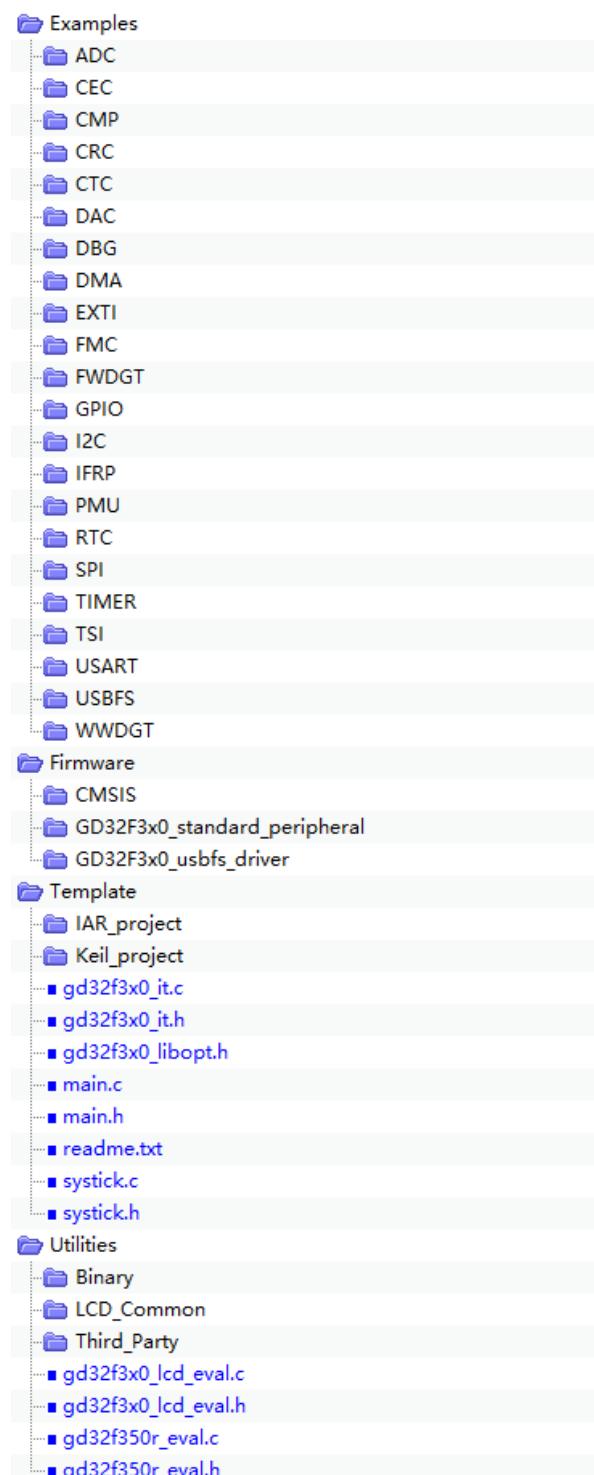
- The peripherals are shortened in XXX format, such as: ADC. More shorten information of peripherals refer to [Peripherals](#);
- The name of sourcefile and header file are started with “GD32f3x0_”, such as: GD32f3x0_adc.h;
- The constants used only in one file should be defined in the used file; the constants used in many files should be defined in corresponding header file. All the constants are written in uppercase of English letters;
- Registers are handled as constants. The naming of them are written in uppercase of English letters. In most cases, register names are shortened accord with the user manual;
- Variables are written in lowercase, when concluded by several words, underlines should be adapted among words;
- The naming of peripheral functions are started with the peripheral abbreviation added with an underline, when the function name is concluded by several words, underlines should be adapted among words, and all the peripheral functions are written in lowercase.

2. Firmware Library Overview

2.1. File Structure of Firmware Library

GD32F3x0_Firmware_Library, the file structure is shown as below:

Figure 2-1. File structure of firmware library of GD32F3x0



2.1.1. Examples Folder

Examples folder, each of GD32 peripheral has a subfolder. Each subfolder contains one or more examples of the peripheral, to show how to use the peripheral correctly. Each of the example subfolder includes the files shown as below:

- readme.txt: the description and using guide of the example;
- GD32f3x0_libopt.h: the header file configures all the peripherals used in the example, included by different “DEFINE” sentences (all the peripherals are enabled by default);
- GD32f3x0_it.c: the source file include all the interrupt service routines (if no interrupt is used, then all the function bodies are empty);
- GD32f3x0_it.h: the header file include all the prototypes of the interrupt service routines;
- systick.c: the source file include the precise time delay functions by using systick;
- systick.h: the header file include the prototype of the precise time delay functions by using systick;
- main.c: example code. Note: all the examples are not influenced by software IDEs.

2.1.2. Firmware Folder

Firmware folder includes all the subfolder and files which are the core part of the firmware:

- CMSIS subfolder includes the Cortex M4 kernel support files, the startup file based on the Cortex M4 kernel processor, the global header file of GD32F3x0 and system configuration file;
- GD32F3x0_standard_peripheral subfolder:
 - Include subfolder includes all the header files of firmware library, users need not modify this folder;
 - Source subfolder includes all the source files of firmware library, users need not modify this folder;

Note: All the codes accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard, and will not be influenced by different software IDEs.

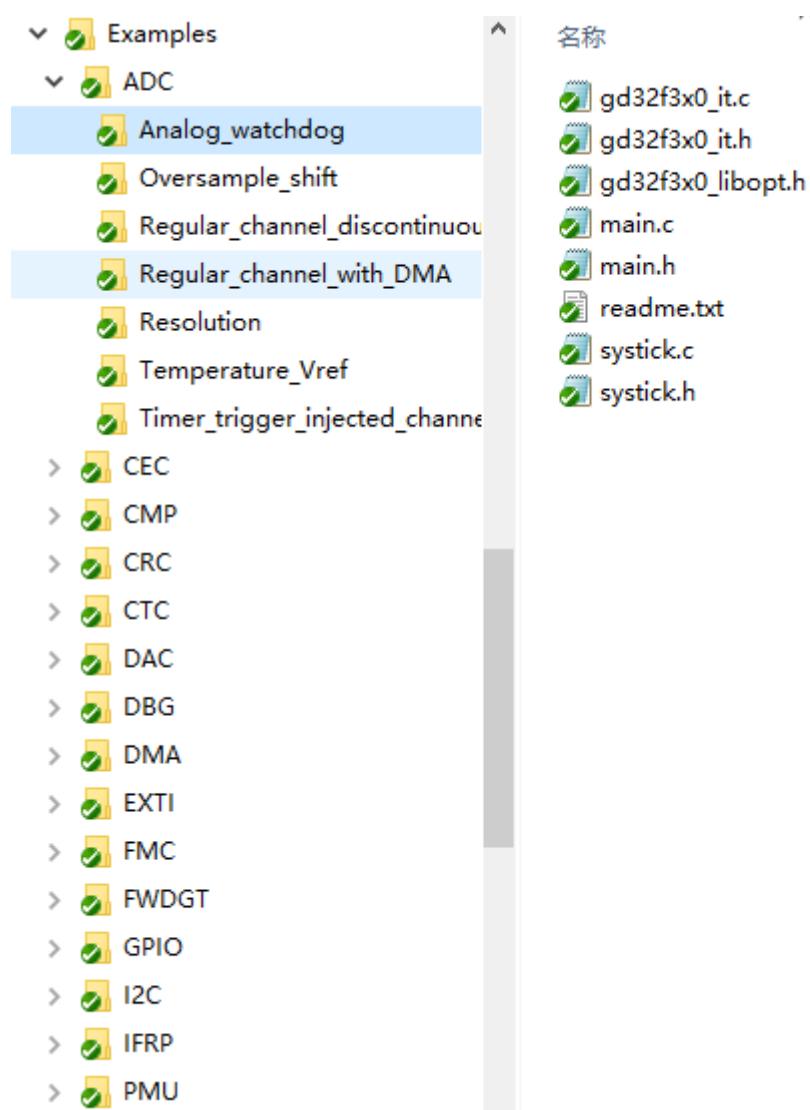
2.1.3. Template Folder

Template folder includes a simple demo of how to use LED, how to print by USART and use key to control, (IAR_project is run in IAR, and Keil_project is run in Keil4). User can use the project template to compile the formware examples, the steps are shown as below:

Select files

Open “Examples” folder, select the module to be tested, such as SPI, open “SPI” folder, select an example of SPI, such as "SPI_master_transmit_slave_receive_interrupt", shown as below:

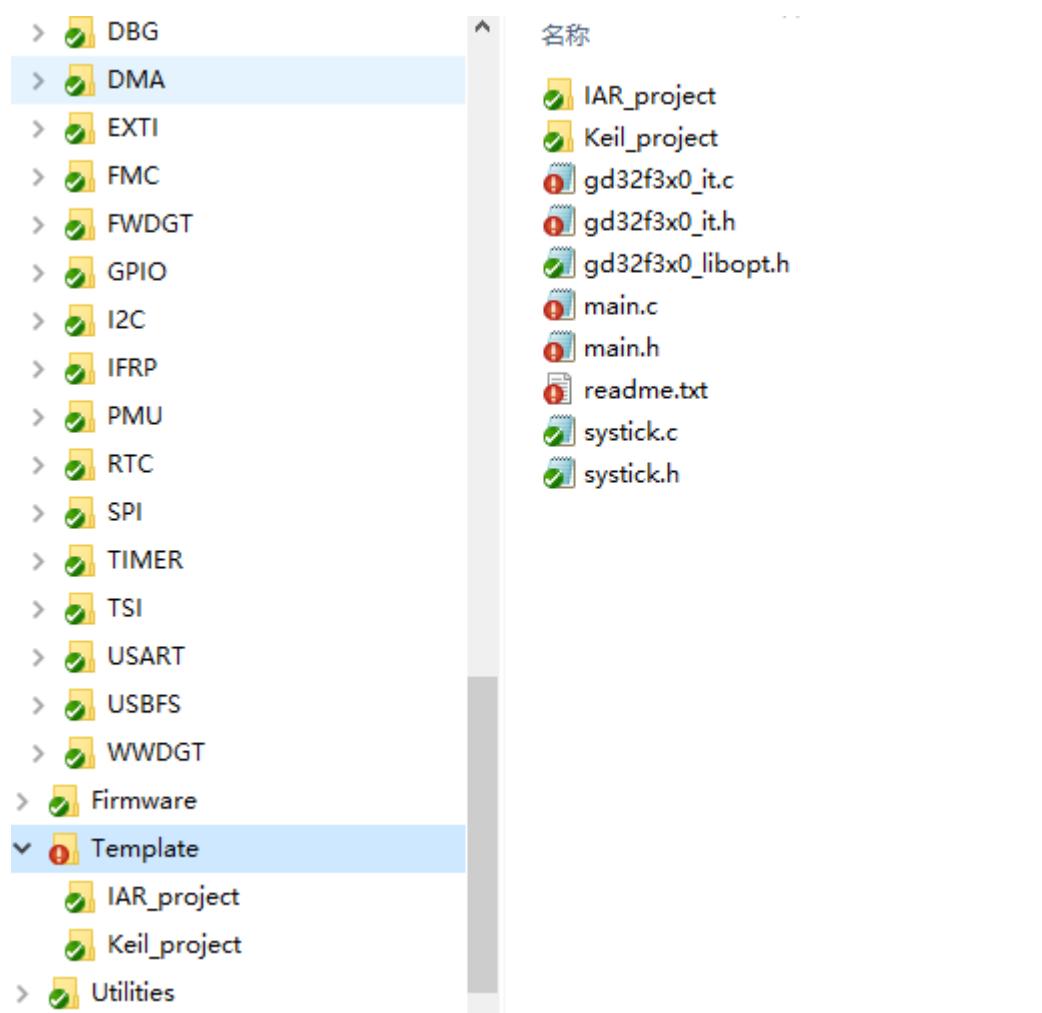
Figure 2-2. Select peripheral example files



Copy files

Open “Template” folder, keep the folders of ” IAR_project” and ” Keil_project”, and delete the other files, then copy all the files in “SPI_master_transmit_slave_receive_interrupt” folder to the “Template” subfolder, shown as below:

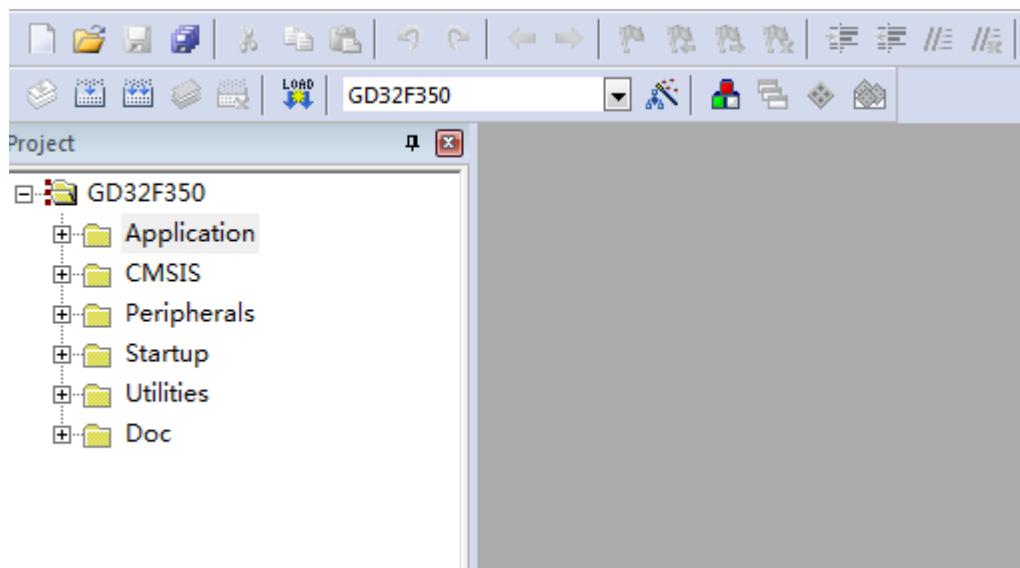
Figure 2-3. Copy the peripheral example files



Open a project

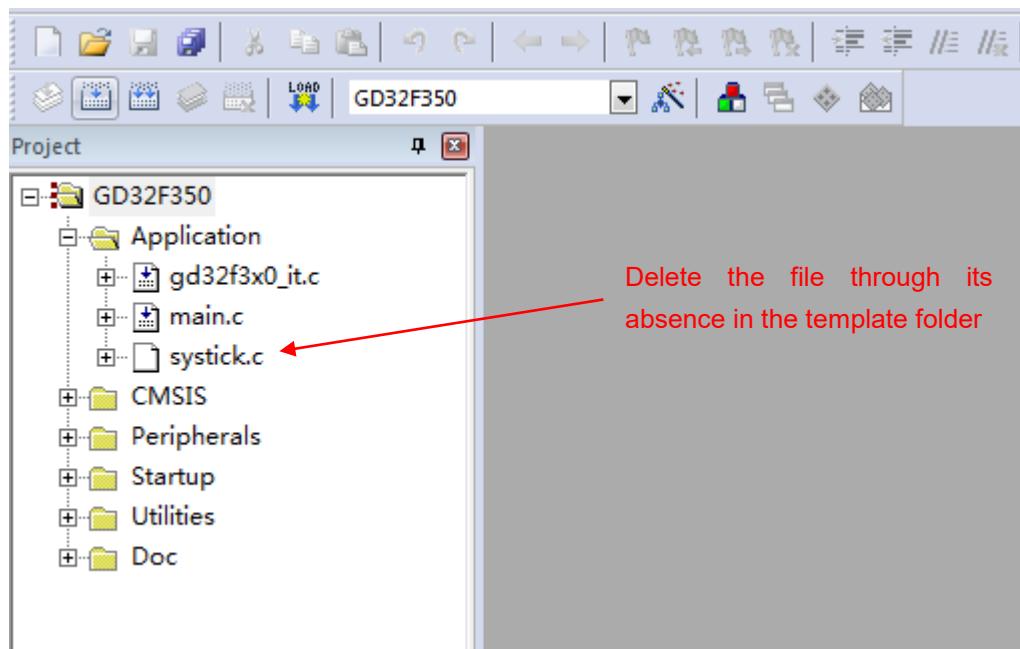
GD provides project in Keil and IAR, users can open project in different IDEs according to their need, such as "Keil_project", open \Template\Keil_project\Project.uvproj, shown as below:

Figure 2-4. Open the project file



Because different module and different functions adopt different files, users should add or delete the files in project according to the copied files, shown as below:

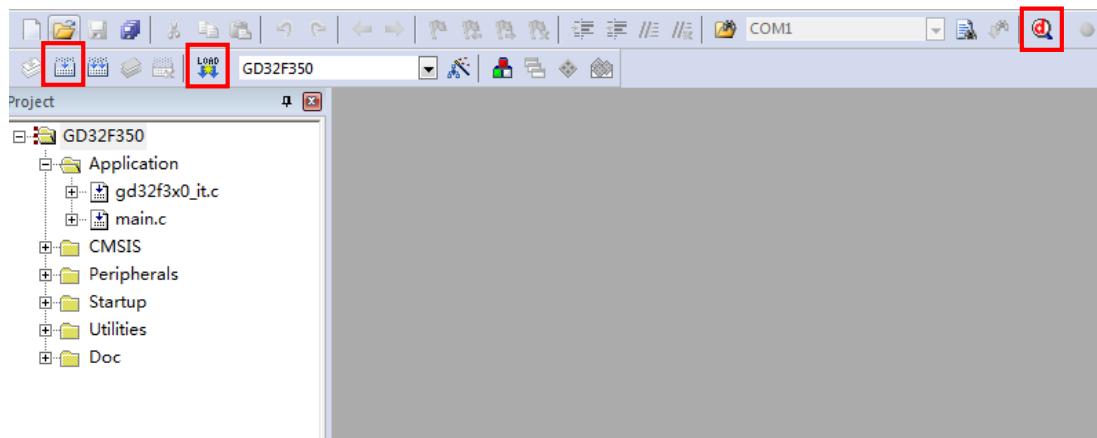
Figure 2-5. Configure project files



Compile-Debug-Download

First compile the project, if there is no error, then select the right jumper cap according to the description of readme, download the project to the target board, and there will be the phenomenon showed accord with the description of readme. The usage of IDE can refer to corresponding software user guide. If users are using Keil, the figure is shown as below:

Figure 2-6. Compile-debug-download



2.1.4. Utilities Folder

Utilities folder includes files about the firmware examples on evaluation board:

- Binary, LCD_Common and Third_Party subfolders;
- GD32f3x0r_eval.h and GD32f3x0_lcd_eval.h are related header files of the evaluation board about running the firmware examples;
- GD32f3x0r_eval.c and GD32f3x0_lcd_eval.c are related source files of the evaluation board about running the firmware examples.

Note: All the codes accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard, and will not be influenced by different software IDEs.

2.2. File descriptions of Firmware Library

The major files about the firmware library are listed and described in the table below.

Table 2-1. Function descriptions of Firmware Library

Files	Descriptions
gd32f3x0_libopt.h	The header file about all the header files of peripherals. It is the only one file which is necessity to be included in the user's application, to connect the firmware library and the application.
main.c	Example of main function.
gd32f3x0_it.h	Header file, including all the prototypes of interrupt service routines.
gd32f3x0_it.c	Source files about interrupt service routines of peripherals. User can write his own interrupt functions in this file. For the different interrupt service requests to the same interrupt vector, users can confirm the interrupt source by functions of judging interrupt flags of peripherals. The functions are included in the firmware library.
gd32f3x0_xxx.h	The header file of peripheral xxx, including functions about peripheral xxx, and the variables used for functions.

Files	Descriptions
gd32f3x0_xxx.c	The C source file for driving peripheral xxx.
systick.h	The header file of systick.c, including prototypes of systick configuration function and delay function.
systick.c	The source file about systick configuration function and delay function.
readme.txt	Description document about how to configure and how to use the firmware example.

3. Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals

3.1. Overview of Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals

The description format of firmware functions are shown as below:

Table 3-1. Peripheral function format of Firmware Library

Function name	Name of peripheral function
Function prototype	Declaration prototype
Function descriptions	Explain the function how to work
Precondition	Requirements should meet before calling this function
The called functions	Other firmware functions called in this function
Input parameter{in}	
Input parameter name	Description
xxx	Description of input parameters
Output parameter{out}	
Output parameter name	Description
xxxx	Description of output parameters
Return value	
Return value type	The range of return value

3.2. ADC

The 12-bit ADC is an analog-to-digital converter using the successive approximation method. The ADC registers are listed in chapter [3.2.1](#), the ADC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.2.2](#).

3.2.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

ADC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-2. ADC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
ADC_STAT	Status register
ADC_CTL0	Control register 0
ADC_CTL1	Control register 1
ADC_SAMPT0	Sample time register 0
ADC_SAMPT1	Sample time register 1
ADC_IOFFx	Inserted channel data offset register x(x=0..3)
ADC_WDHT	Watchdog high threshold register
ADC_WDLT	Watchdog low threshold register

Registers	Descriptions
ADC_RSQ0	Regular sequence register 0
ADC_RSQ1	Regular sequence register 1
ADC_RSQ2	Regular sequence register 2
ADC_ISQ	Inserted sequence register
ADC_IDATAx	Inserted data register x(x=0..3)
ADC_RDATA	Regular data register
ADC_OVSAMPCTL	Oversample control register

3.2.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

ADC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-3. ADC firmware function

Function name	Function description
adc_deinit	reset ADC peripheral
adc_enable	enable ADC interface
adc_disable	disable ADC interface
adc_calibration_enable	ADC calibration and reset calibration
adc_dma_mode_enable	enable DMA request
adc_dma_mode_disable	disable DMA request
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable	enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable	disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
adc_vbat_enable	enable the vbat channel
adc_vbat_disable	disable the vbat channel
adc_discontinuous_mode_config	configure ADC discontinuous mode
adc_special_function_config	enable or disable ADC special function
adc_data_alignment_config	configure ADC data alignment
adc_channel_length_config	configure the length of regular channel group or inserted channel group
adc_regular_channel_config	configure ADC regular channel
adc_inserted_channel_config	configure ADC inserted channel
adc_inserted_channel_offset_config	configure ADC inserted channel offset
adc_external_trigger_config	enable or disable ADC external trigger
adc_external_trigger_source_config	configure ADC external trigger source
adc_software_trigger_enable	enable ADC software trigger
adc_regular_data_read	read ADC regular group data register
adc_inserted_data_read	read ADC inserted group data register
adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable	configure ADC analog watchdog single channel
adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable	configure ADC analog watchdog group channel
adc_watchdog_disable	disable ADC analog watchdog

Function name	Function description
adc_watchdog_threshold_config	configure ADC analog watchdog threshold
adc_resolution_config	configure ADC resolution
adc_oversample_mode_config	configure ADC oversample mode
adc_oversample_mode_enable	enable ADC oversample mode
adc_oversample_mode_disable	disable ADC oversample mode
adc_flag_get	get the ADC flag bits
adc_flag_clear	clear the ADC flag bits
adc_interrupt_enable	enable ADC interrupt
adc_interrupt_disable	disable ADC interrupt
adc_interrupt_flag_get	get the ADC interrupt flag
adc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the ADC interrupt flag

adc_deinit

The description of adc_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-4. Function adc_deinit

Function name	adc_deinit
Function prototype	void adc_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset ADC peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset ADC */
adc_deinit();
```

adc_enable

The description of adc_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-5. Function adc_enable

Function name	adc_enable
Function prototype	void adc_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable ADC interface
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC */
adc_enable();
```

adc_disable

The description of adc_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-6. Function adc_disable

Function name	adc_disable
Function prototype	void adc_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable ADC interface
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC */
adc_disable();
```

adc_calibration_enable

The description of adc_calibration_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-7. Function adc_calibration_enable

Function name	adc_calibration_enable
Function prototype	void adc_calibration_enable(void);
Function descriptions	ADC calibration and reset calibration
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* ADC calibration and reset calibration */

adc_calibration_enable();
```

adc_dma_mode_enable

The description of adc_dma_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-8. Function adc_dma_mode_enable

Function name	adc_dma_mode_enable
Function prototype	void adc_dma_mode_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable ADC DMA request
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC DMA request */

adc_dma_mode_enable();
```

adc_dma_mode_disable

The description of adc_dma_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-9. Function adc_dma_mode_disable

Function name	adc_dma_mode_disable
Function prototype	void adc_dma_mode_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable ADC DMA request
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC DMA request */

adc_dma_mode_disable();
```

adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable

The description of adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-10. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable

Function name	adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable
Function prototype	void adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel */

adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable();
```

adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable

The description of adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-11. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable

Function name	adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable
Function prototype	void adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel */

adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable();
```

adc_vbat_enable

The description of adc_vbat_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-12. Function adc_vbat_enable

Function name	adc_vbat_enable
Function prototype	void adc_vbat_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the vbat channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the vbat channel */

adc_vbat_enable();
```

adc_vbat_disable

The description of adc_vbat_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-13. Function adc_vbat_disable

Function name	adc_vbat_disable
Function prototype	void adc_vbat_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the vbat channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the vbat channel */
```

```
adc_vbat_disable();
```

adc_discontinuous_mode_config

The description of adc_discontinuous_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-14. Function adc_discontinuous_mode_config

Function name	adc_discontinuous_mode_config
Function prototype	void adc_discontinuous_mode_config(uint8_t channel_group, uint8_t length);
Function descriptions	configure ADC discontinuous mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel_group	select the channel group
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
ADC_CHANNEL_DISCON_DISABLE	disable discontinuous mode of regular and inserted channel
Input parameter{in}	
length	number of conversions in discontinuous mode, the number can be 1..8 for regular channel, the number has no effect for inserted channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC regular channel group discontinuous mode */
adc_discontinuous_mode_config(ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL, 6);
```

adc_special_function_config

The description of adc_special_function_config is shown as below:

Table 3-15. Function adc_special_function_config

Function name	adc_special_function_config
Function prototype	void adc_special_function_config(uint32_t function, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	enable or disable ADC special function
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
function	the function to config
<i>ADC_SCAN_MODE</i>	scan mode select
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_AUTO</i>	inserted channel group convert automatically
<i>ADC_CONTINUOUS_MODE</i>	continuous mode select
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC scan mode */
adc_special_function_config(ADC_SCAN_MODE, ENABLE);
```

adc_data_alignment_config

The description of **adc_data_alignment_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-16. Function adc_data_alignment_config

Function name	adc_data_alignment_config
Function prototype	void adc_data_alignment_config(uint32_t data_alignment);
Function descriptions	configure ADC data alignment
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
data_alignment	data alignment select
<i>ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT</i>	right alignment
<i>ADC_DATAALIGN_LEFT</i>	left alignment
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure ADC data alignment */

adc_data_alignment_config(ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT);

```

adc_channel_length_config

The description of adc_channel_length_config is shown as below:

Table 3-17. Function adc_channel_length_config

Function name	adc_channel_length_config
Function prototype	void adc_channel_length_config(uint8_t channel_group, uint32_t length);
Function descriptions	configure the length of regular channel group or inserted channel group
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel_group	select the channel group
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
Input parameter{in}	
length	the length of the channel, regular channel 1-16, inserted channel 1-4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure the length of ADC regular channel */

adc_channel_length_config(ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL, 4);

```

adc_regular_channel_config

The description of adc_regular_channel_config is shown as below:

Table 3-18. Function adc_regular_channel_config

Function name	adc_regular_channel_config
Function prototype	void adc_regular_channel_config(uint8_t rank, uint8_t channel, uint32_t sample_time);
Function descriptions	configure ADC regular channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
rank	the regular group sequence rank, this parameter must be between 0 to 15
Input parameter{in}	

channel	the selected ADC channel
<i>ADC_CHANNEL_x</i>	ADC Channelx (x=0..18)
Input parameter{in}	
sample_time	the sample time value
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_1POINT5</i>	1.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5</i>	7.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_13POINT5</i>	13.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_28POINT5</i>	28.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_41POINT5</i>	41.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_55POINT5</i>	55.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_71POINT5</i>	71.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_239POINT5</i>	239.5 cycles
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure ADC regular channel */
adc_regular_channel_config(1, ADC_CHANNEL_0, ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5);

```

adc_inserted_channel_config

The description of **adc_inserted_channel_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-19. Function adc_inserted_channel_config

Function name	adc_inserted_channel_config
Function prototype	void adc_inserted_channel_config(uint8_t rank, uint8_t channel, uint32_t sample_time);
Function descriptions	configure ADC inserted channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
rank	the inserted group sequencer rank, this parameter must be between 0 to 3
Input parameter{in}	

channel	the selected ADC channel
<i>ADC_CHANNEL_x</i>	ADC Channelx (x=0..18)
Input parameter{in}	
sample_time	the sample time value
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_1POINT5</i>	1.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5</i>	7.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_13POINT5</i>	13.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_28POINT5</i>	28.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_41POINT5</i>	41.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_55POINT5</i>	55.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_71POINT5</i>	71.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_239POINT5</i>	239.5 cycles
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 inserted channel */
adc_inserted_channel_config(ADC0, 1, ADC_CHANNEL_0, ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5);
```

adc_inserted_channel_offset_config

The description of `adc_inserted_channel_offset_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-20. Function `adc_inserted_channel_offset_config`

Function name	adc_inserted_channel_offset_config
Function prototype	void adc_inserted_channel_offset_config(uint8_t inserted_channel, uint16_t offset);
Function descriptions	configure ADC inserted channel offset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
inserted_channel	insert channel select
<i>ADC_INSERTED_</i>	inserted channel, x=0,1,2,3

<i>CHANNEL_x</i>	
Input parameter{in}	
offset	the offset data, this parameter must be between 0 to 4095
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC inserted channel offset */
adc_inserted_channel_offset_config(ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0, 100);
```

adc_external_trigger_config

The description of `adc_external_trigger_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-21. Function `adc_external_trigger_config`

Function name	<code>adc_external_trigger_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_external_trigger_config(uint8_t channel_group, ControlStatus newvalue);</code>
Function descriptions	enable or disable ADC external trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel_group	select the channel group
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
ENABLE	enable function
DISABLE	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC inserted channel group external trigger */
adc_external_trigger_config(ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0, ENABLE);
```

adc_external_trigger_source_config

The description of adc_external_trigger_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-22. Function adc_external_trigger_source_config

Function name	adc_external_trigger_source_config
Function prototype	void adc_external_trigger_source_config(uint8_t channel_group, uint32_t external_trigger_source);
Function descriptions	configure ADC external trigger source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel_group	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
Input parameter{in}	
external_trigger_source	regular or inserted group trigger source
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH0</i>	TIMER0 CH0 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH1</i>	TIMER0 CH1 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH2</i>	TIMER0 CH2 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T1_CH1</i>	TIMER1 CH1 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T2_TRGO</i>	TIMER2 TRGO event select for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T14_CH0</i>	TIMER14 CH0 event select for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_EXTI_11</i>	external interrupt line 11 for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_NONE</i>	software trigger for regular channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T0_TRGO</i>	TIMER0 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T0_CH3</i>	TIMER0 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T1_TRGO</i>	TIMER1 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T1_CH0</i>	TIMER1 CH0 event select for inserted channel

<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T2_CH3</i>	TIMER2 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T14_TRGO</i>	TIMER14 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_EXTI_15</i>	external interrupt line 15 for inserted channel
<i>ADC_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_NONE</i>	software trigger for inserted channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC regular channel external trigger source */
adc_external_trigger_source_config(ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL,
ADC_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH0);
```

adc_software_trigger_enable

The description of `adc_software_trigger_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-23. Function `adc_software_trigger_enable`

Function name	adc_software_trigger_enable
Function prototype	void adc_software_trigger_enable(uint8_t channel_group);
Function descriptions	enable ADC software trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel_group	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC regular channel group software trigger */
adc_software_trigger_enable(ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL);
```

adc_regular_data_read

The description of adc_regular_data_read is shown as below:

Table 3-24. Function adc_regular_data_read

Function name	adc_regular_data_read
Function prototype	uint16_t adc_regular_data_read(void);
Function descriptions	read ADC regular group data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read ADC regular group data register */

uint16_t adc_value = 0;

adc_value = adc_regular_data_read();
```

adc_inserted_data_read

The description of adc_inserted_data_read is shown as below:

Table 3-25. Function adc_inserted_data_read

Function name	adc_inserted_data_read
Function prototype	uint16_t adc_inserted_data_read(uint8_t inserted_channel);
Function descriptions	read ADC inserted group data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
inserted_channel	insert channel select
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_x	inserted Channelx, x=0,1,2,3
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read ADC inserted group data register */

uint16_t adc_value = 0;

adc_value = adc_inserted_data_read (ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0);
```

adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable

The description of adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-26. Function adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable

Function name	adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable(uint8_t channel);
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog single channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel	the selected ADC channel
ADC_CHANNEL_x	ADC Channelx (x=0..18)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC analog watchdog single channel */
adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable(ADC_CHANNEL_1);
```

adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable

The description of adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-27. Function adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable

Function name	adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable(uint8_t channel_group);
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog group channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel_group	the channel group use analog watchdog
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
ADC_REGULAR_INSERTED_CHANNEL	both regular and inserted group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC analog watchdog group channel */

adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable(ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL);
```

adc_watchdog_disable

The description of adc_watchdog_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-28. Function adc_watchdog_disable

Function name	adc_watchdog_disable
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable ADC analog watchdog
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC analog watchdog */

adc_watchdog_disable();
```

adc_watchdog_threshold_config

The description of adc_watchdog_threshold_config is shown as below:

Table 3-29. Function adc_watchdog_threshold_config

Function name	adc_watchdog_threshold_config
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_threshold_config(uint16_t low_threshold, uint16_t high_threshold);
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
low_threshold	analog watchdog low threshold, 0..4095
Input parameter{in}	
high_threshold	analog watchdog high threshold, 0..4095
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-	-
---	---	---

Example:

```
/* configure ADC analog watchdog threshold */
adc_watchdog_threshold_config(0x0400, 0xA00);
```

adc_resolution_config

The description of adc_resolution_config is shown as below:

Table 3-30. Function adc_resolution_config

Function name	adc_resolution_config
Function prototype	void adc_resolution_config(uint32_t resolution);
Function descriptions	configure ADC resolution
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
resolution	ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_12B</i>	12-bit ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_10B</i>	10-bit ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_8B</i>	8-bit ADC resolution
<i>ADC_RESOLUTION_6B</i>	6-bit ADC resolution
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC resolution */
adc_resolution_config (ADC_RESOLUTION_12B);
```

adc_oversample_mode_config

The description of adc_oversample_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-31. Function adc_oversample_mode_config

Function name	adc_oversample_mode_config
Function prototype	void adc_oversample_mode_config(uint32_t mode, uint16_t shift, uint8_t ratio);
Function descriptions	configure ADC oversample mode

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	ADC oversampling mode
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ALL_CONVERT</i>	all oversampled conversions for a channel are done consecutively after a trigger
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ONE_CONVERT</i>	each oversampled conversion for a channel needs a trigger
Input parameter{in}	
shift	ADC oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_NONE</i>	no oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_1B</i>	1-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_2B</i>	2-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_3B</i>	3-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_4B</i>	4-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_5B</i>	5-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_6B</i>	6-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_7B</i>	7-bit oversampling shift
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_8B</i>	8-bit oversampling shift
Input parameter{in}	
ratio	ADC oversampling ratio
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL2</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 2
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL4</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 4
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL8</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 8
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL16</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 16
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL32</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 32
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL64</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 64
<i>ADC_OVERSAMPLING</i>	oversampling ratio multiple 128

<u>_RATIO_MUL128</u>	
<u>ADC_OVERSAMPLING</u>	oversampling ratio multiple 256
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC oversample mode: 16 times sample, 4 bits shift */

adc_oversample_mode_config(ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ALL_CONVERT,
ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_4B, ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL16);
```

adc_oversample_mode_enable

The description of adc_oversample_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-32. Function adc_oversample_mode_enable

Function name	adc_oversample_mode_enable
Function prototype	void adc_oversample_mode_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable ADC oversample mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC oversample mode */

adc_oversample_mode_enable();
```

adc_oversample_mode_disable

The description of adc_oversample_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-33. Function adc_oversample_mode_disable

Function name	adc_oversample_mode_disable
Function prototype	void adc_oversample_mode_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable ADC oversample mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC oversample mode */
adc_oversample_mode_disable();
```

adc_flag_get

The description of adc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-34. Function adc_flag_get

Function name	adc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus adc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get the ADC flag bits
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the adc flag bits
<i>ADC_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog event flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_STIC</i>	start flag of inserted channel group
<i>ADC_FLAG_STRC</i>	start flag of regular channel group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ADC analog watchdog flag bits*/
FlagStatus flag_value;
flag_value = adc_flag_get(ADC_FLAG_WDE);
```

adc_flag_clear

The description of adc_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-35. Function adc_flag_clear

Function name	adc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void adc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the ADC flag bits
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the adc flag bits
ADC_FLAG_WDE	analog watchdog event flag
ADC_FLAG_EOC	end of group conversion flag
ADC_FLAG_EOIC	end of inserted group conversion flag
ADC_FLAG_STIC	start flag of inserted channel group
ADC_FLAG_STRC	start flag of regular channel group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the ADC analog watchdog flag bits*/
adc_flag_clear(ADC_FLAG_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_enable

The description of adc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-36. Function adc_interrupt_enable

Function name	adc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void adc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable ADC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the adc interrupt
ADC_INT_WDE	analog watchdog interrupt
ADC_INT_EOC	end of group conversion interrupt
ADC_INT_EOIC	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC analog watchdog interrupt */
```

```
adc_interrupt_enable(ADC_INT_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_disable

The description of adc_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-37. Function adc_interrupt_disable

Function name	adc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void adc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable ADC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the adc interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC interrupt */
adc_interrupt_disable(ADC_INT_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of adc_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-38. Function adc_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	adc_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus adc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get the ADC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the adc interrupt flag
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ADC analog watchdog interrupt bits*/
FlagStatus flag_value;
flag_value = adc_interrupt_flag_get(ADC_INT_FLAG_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of adc_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-39. Function adc_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	adc_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void adc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the ADC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the adc interrupt flag
ADC_INT_FLAG_WDE	analog watchdog interrupt
ADC_INT_FLAG_EOC	end of group conversion interrupt
ADC_INT_FLAG_EOIC	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the ADC analog watchdog interrupt bits*/
adc_interrupt_flag_clear(ADC_INT_FLAG_WDE);
```

3.3. CEC

Consumer Electronics Control (CEC) belongs to a part of HDMI (High-Definition MultimedialInterface) standard. CEC, as a kind of protocol, provides the advanced control functions of allkinds of audio-visual products in a user environment. The CEC registers are listed in chapter [3.3.1](#), the CEC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.3.2](#).

3.3.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CEC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-40. CEC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CEC_CTL	Control register
CEC_CFG	Configuration register
CEC_TDATA	Transmit data register
CEC_RDATA	Receive data register
CEC_INTF	Interrupt Flag Register
CEC_INTEN	Interrupt enable register

3.3.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CEC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-41. CEC firmware function

Function name	Function description
cec_deinit	reset HDMI-CEC controller
cec_init	configure signal free time,the signal free time counter start option,own address
cec_error_config	configure generate Error-bit, whether stop receive message when detected bit rising error
cec_enable	enable HDMI-CEC controller
cec_disable	disable HDMI-CEC controller
cec_transmission_start	start CEC message transmission
cec_transmission_end	end CEC message transmission
cec_listen_mode_enable	enable CEC listen mode
cec_listen_mode_disable	disable CEC listen mode
cec_own_address_config	configure and clear own address
cec_sft_config	configure signal free time and the signal free time counter start option
cec_generate_errorbit_config	configure generate Error-bit when detected some abnormal situation or not
cec_stop_receive_bre_config	whether stop receive message when detected bit rising error
cec_reception_tolerance_enable	enable reception bit timing tolerance
cec_reception_tolerance_disable	disable reception bit timing tolerance
cec_data_send	send a data by the CEC peripheral
cec_data_receive	receive a data by the CEC peripheral
cec_interrupt_enable	enable interrupt
cec_interrupt_disable	disable interrupt
cec_flag_get	get CEC status
cec_flag_clear	clear CEC status
cec_interrupt_flag_get	get CEC int flag and status
cec_interrupt_flag_clear	clear CEC int flag and status

cec_deinit

The description of cec_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-42. Function cec_deinit

Function name	cec_deinit
Function prototype	void cec_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset HDMI-CEC controller
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset CEC */
cec_deinit();
```

cec_init

The description of cec_init is shown as below:

Table 3-43. Function cec_init

Function name	cec_init
Function prototype	void cec_init(uint32_t sftmopt, uint32_t sft, uint32_t address);
Function descriptions	configure signal free time,the signal free time counter start option,own address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sftmopt	signal free time counter start option
CEC_SFT_START_ST AOM	signal free time counter starts counting when STAOM is asserted
CEC_SFT_START_LA ST	signal free time counter starts automatically after transmission/reception end
Input parameter{in}	
sft	signal free time
CEC_SFT_PROTOCOL _PERIOD	the signal free time will perform as HDMI-CEC protocol description
CEC_SFT_1POINT5_P ERIOD	1.5 nominal data bit periods

<i>CEC_SFT_2POINT5_P ERIOD</i>	2.5 nominal data bit periods
<i>CEC_SFT_3POINT5_P ERIOD</i>	3.5 nominal data bit periods
<i>CEC_SFT_4POINT5_P ERIOD</i>	4.5 nominal data bit periods
<i>CEC_SFT_5POINT5_P ERIOD</i>	5.5 nominal data bit periods
<i>CEC_SFT_6POINT5_P ERIOD</i>	6.5 nominal data bit periods
<i>CEC_SFT_7POINT5_P ERIOD</i>	7.5 nominal data bit periods
Input parameter{in}	
address	own address
<i>CEC_OWN_ADDRESS _CLEAR</i>	own address is cleared
<i>CEC_OWN_ADDRESS x</i>	own address is x
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* init CEC*/
cec_init(CEC_SFT_START_STAOM, CEC_SFT_PROTOCOL_PERIOD,
CEC_OWN_ADDRESS0);
```

cec_error_config

The description of `cec_error_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-44. Function `cec_error_config`

Function name	<code>cec_error_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void cec_error_config(uint32_t broadcast, uint32_t singlecast_lbpe, uint32_t singlecast_bre, uint32_t rxbrestp);</code>
Function descriptions	configure generate Error-bit when detected some abnormal situation or not, whether stop receive message when detected bit rising error
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
broadcast	generate an Error-bit in broadcast message or not
<i>CEC_BROADCAST_E</i>	generate Error-bit in broadcast

<i>RROR_BIT_ON</i>	
<i>CEC_BROADCAST_ERROR_BIT_ON</i>	do not generate Error-bit in broadcast
Input parameter{in}	
<i>singlecast_lbpe</i>	generate an Error-bit when detected BPLE in singlecast
<i>CEC_LONG_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_ON</i>	generate Error-bit on long bit period error
<i>CEC_LONG_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_OFF</i>	do not generate Error-bit on long bit period error
Input parameter{in}	
<i>singlecast_bre</i>	generate an Error-bit when detected BRE in singlecast
<i>CEC_RISING_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_ON</i>	generate Error-bit on bit rising error
<i>CEC_RISING_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_OFF</i>	do not generate Error-bit on bit rising error
Input parameter{in}	
<i>rbrestp</i>	whether stop receive message when detected BRE
<i>CEC_STOP_RISING_ERROR_BIT_ON</i>	stop reception when detected bit rising error
<i>CEC_STOP_RISING_ERROR_BIT_OFF</i>	do not stop reception when detected bit rising error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure generate Error-bit when detected some abnormal situation or not, whether stop
receive message when detected bit rising error */

cec_error_config(CEC_BROADCAST_ERROR_BIT_ON,
CEC_LONG_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_ON, CEC_RISING_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_ON,
CEC_STOP_RISING_ERROR_BIT_ON);
```

cec_enable

The description of **cec_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-45. Function **cec_enable**

Function name	cec_enable
Function prototype	void cec_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable HDMI-CEC controller
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable HDMI-CEC controller */
cec_enable();
```

cec_disable

The description of **cec_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-46. Function **cec_disable**

Function name	cec_disable
Function prototype	void cec_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable HDMI-CEC controller
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable HDMI-CEC controller */
cec_disable ();
```

cec_transmission_start

The description of **cec_transmission_start** is shown as below:

Table 3-47. Function **cec_transmission_start**

Function name	cec_transmission_start
Function prototype	void cec_transmission_start (void);
Function descriptions	start CEC message transmission
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start CEC message transmission */

cec_transmission_start();
```

cec_transmission_end

The description of `cec_transmission_end` is shown as below:

Table 3-48. Function `cec_transmission_end`

Function name	cec_transmission_end
Function prototype	void cec_transmission_end (void);
Function descriptions	end CEC message transmission
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* end CEC message transmission */

cec_transmission_end();
```

cec_listen_mode_enable

The description of `cec_listen_mode_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-49. Function `cec_listen_mode_enable`

Function name	cec_listen_mode_enable
Function prototype	void cec_listen_mode_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable CEC listen mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CEC listen mode */
cec_listen_mode_enable();
```

cec_listen_mode_disable

The description of `cec_listen_mode_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-50. Function `cec_listen_mode_disable`

Function name	cec_listen_mode_disable
Function prototype	void cec_listen_mode_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable CEC listen mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CEC listen mode */
cec_listen_mode_disable();
```

cec_own_address_config

The description of `cec_own_address_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-51. Function `cec_own_address_config`

Function name	cec_own_address_config
Function prototype	void cec_own_address_config(uint32_t address);
Function descriptions	configure and clear own address.the controller can be configured to multiple own address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
address	own address
CEC_OWN_ADDRESS_CLEAR	own address is cleared
CEC_OWN_ADDRESS	own address is x

x	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure and clear own address.the controller can be configured to multiple own address
*/
cec_own_address_config (CEC_OWN_ADDRESS_CLEAR);
```

cec_sft_config

The description of **cec_sft_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-52. Function **cec_sft_config**

Function name	cec_sft_config
Function prototype	void cec_sft_config(uint32_t sftmopt, uint32_t sft);
Function descriptions	configure signal free time and the signal free time counter start option
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sftmopt	signal free time counter start option
CEC_SFT_START_ST_AOM	signal free time counter starts counting when STAOM is asserted
CEC_SFT_START_LA_ST	signal free time counter starts automatically after transmission/reception end
Input parameter{in}	
sft	signal free time
CEC_SFT_PROTOCOL_PERIOD	the signal free time will perform as HDMI-CEC protocol description
CEC_SFT_1POINT5_PERIOD	1.5 nominal data bit periods
CEC_SFT_2POINT5_PERIOD	2.5 nominal data bit periods
CEC_SFT_3POINT5_PERIOD	3.5 nominal data bit periods
CEC_SFT_4POINT5_PERIOD	4.5 nominal data bit periods
CEC_SFT_5POINT5_PERIOD	5.5 nominal data bit periods
CEC_SFT_6POINT5_PERIOD	6.5 nominal data bit periods

CEC_SFT_7POINT5_P ERIOD	7.5 nominal data bit periods
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure signal free time and the signal free time counter start option */
cec_sft_config (CEC_SFT_START_STAOM, CEC_SFT_PROTOCOL_PERIOD);
```

cec_generate_errorbit_config

The description of **cec_generate_errorbit_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-53. Function `cec_generate_errorbit_config`

Function name	cec_generate_errorbit_config
Function prototype	void cec_generate_errorbit_config(uint32_t broadcast, uint32_t singlecast_lbpe, uint32_t singlecast_bre);
Function descriptions	configure generate Error-bit when detected some abnormal situation or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
broadcast	generate Error-bit in broadcast or not
CEC_BROADCAST_E RROR_BIT_ON	generate Error-bit in broadcast
CEC_BROADCAST_E RROR_BIT_OFF	do not generate Error-bit in broadcast
Input parameter{in}	
singlecast_lbpe	generate Error-bit on long bit period error or not
CEC_LONG_PERIOD_ ERROR_BIT_ON	generate Error-bit on long bit period error
CEC_LONG_PERIOD_ ERROR_BIT_OFF	do not generate Error-bit on long bit period error
Input parameter{in}	
singlecast_bre	generate Error-bit on bit rising error or not
CEC_RISING_PERIOD_ _ERROR_BIT_ON	generate Error-bit on bit rising error
CEC_RISING_PERIOD_ _ERROR_BIT_OFF	do not generate Error-bit on bit rising error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-	-
---	---	---

Example:

```
/* configure generate Error-bit when detected some abnormal situation or not */

cec_generate_errorbit_config(CEC_BROADCAST_ERROR_BIT_ON,
    CEC_LONG_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_ON, CEC_RISING_PERIOD_ERROR_BIT_ON);
```

cec_stop_receive_bre_config

The description of `cec_stop_receive_bre_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-54. Function `cec_stop_receive_bre_config`

Function name	cec_stop_receive_bre_config
Function prototype	void cec_stop_receive_bre_config(uint32_t rxbrestp);
Function descriptions	whether stop receive message when detected bit rising error
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>rxbrestp</code>	stop reception when detected bit rising error or not
<code>CEC_STOP_RISING_ERROR_BIT_ON</code>	stop reception when detected bit rising error
<code>CEC_STOP_RISING_ERROR_BIT_OFF</code>	do not stop reception when detected bit rising error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* whether stop receive message when detected bit rising error */

cec_stop_receive_bre_config(CEC_STOP_RISING_ERROR_BIT_ON);
```

cec_reception_tolerance_enable

The description of `cec_reception_tolerance_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-55. Function `cec_reception_tolerance_enable`

Function name	cec_reception_tolerance_enable
Function prototype	void cec_reception_tolerance_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable reception bit timing tolerance
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable reception bit timing tolerance */
cec_reception_tolerance_enable();
```

cec_reception_tolerance_disable

The description of `cec_reception_tolerance_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-56. Function `cec_reception_tolerance_disable`

Function name	cec_reception_tolerance_disable
Function prototype	void cec_reception_tolerance_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable reception bit timing tolerance
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable reception bit timing tolerance */
cec_reception_tolerance_disable();
```

cec_data_send

The description of `cec_data_send` is shown as below:

Table 3-57. Function `cec_data_send`

Function name	cec_data_send
Function prototype	void cec_data_send(uint8_t data);
Function descriptions	send a data by the CEC peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
data	the data to transmit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* send a data by the CEC peripheral */
cec_data_send (0x55);
```

cec_data_receive

The description of `cec_data_receive` is shown as below:

Table 3-58. Function `cec_data_receive`

Function name	cec_data_receive
Function prototype	uint8_t cec_data_receive(void);
Function descriptions	receive a data by the CEC peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
Uint8_t	the data to receive

Example:

```
/* receive a data by the CEC peripheral */
uint8_t data = 0;
data = cec_data_receive();
```

cec_interrupt_enable

The description of `cec_interrupt_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-59. Function `cec_interrupt_enable`

Function name	cec_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void cec_interrupt_enable(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	enable interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag
<i>CEC_INT_BR</i>	enable Rx-byte data received interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_REND</i>	enable end of reception interrupt

<i>CEC_INT_RO</i>	enable RX overrun interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_BRE</i>	enable bit rising error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_BPSE</i>	enable short bit period error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_BPLE</i>	enable long bit period error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_RAE</i>	enable Rx ACK error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_ARBF</i>	enable arbitration lost interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TBR</i>	enable Tx-byte data request interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TEND</i>	enable transmission successfully end interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TU</i>	enable Tx data buffer underrun interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TERR</i>	enable Tx-error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TAERR</i>	enable Tx ACK error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CEC_INT_BR interrupt */
cec_interrupt_enable (CEC_INT_BR);
```

cec_interrupt_disable

The description of `cec_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-60. Function `cec_interrupt_disable`

Function name	<code>cec_interrupt_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void cec_interrupt_disable (uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	disable interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag
<i>CEC_INT_BR</i>	disable Rx-byte data received interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_REND</i>	disable end of reception interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_RO</i>	disable RX overrun interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_BRE</i>	disable bit rising error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_BPSE</i>	disable short bit period error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_BPLE</i>	disable long bit period error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_RAE</i>	disable Rx ACK error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_ARBF</i>	disable arbitration lost interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TBR</i>	disable Tx-byte data request interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TEND</i>	disable transmission successfully end interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TU</i>	disable Tx data buffer underrun interrupt

<i>CEC_INT_TERR</i>	disable Tx-error interrupt
<i>CEC_INT_TAERR</i>	disable Tx ACK error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CEC_INT_BR interrupt */

cec_interrupt_disable (CEC_INT_BR);
```

cec_flag_get

The description of `cec_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-61. Function `cec_flag_get`

Function name	<code>cec_flag_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus cec_flag_get(uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	get CEC status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag
<i>CEC_FLAG_BR</i>	Rx-byte data received
<i>CEC_FLAG_REND</i>	end of reception
<i>CEC_FLAG_RO</i>	RX overrun
<i>CEC_FLAG_BRE</i>	bit rising error
<i>CEC_FLAG_BPSE</i>	short bit period error
<i>CEC_FLAG_BPLE</i>	long bit period error
<i>CEC_FLAG_RAE</i>	Rx ACK error
<i>CEC_FLAG_ARBF</i>	arbitration lost
<i>CEC_FLAG_TBR</i>	Tx-byte data request
<i>CEC_FLAG_TEND</i>	transmission successfully end
<i>CEC_FLAG_TU</i>	Tx data buffer underrun
<i>CEC_FLAG_TERR</i>	Tx-error
<i>CEC_FLAG_TAERR</i>	Tx ACK error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get CEC_FLAG_BR status */
```

```

FlagStatus flag = reset;
flag = cec_flag_get (CEC_INT_BR);
  
```

cec_flag_clear

The description of `cec_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-62. Function `cec_flag_clear`

Function name	cec_flag_clear
Function prototype	void cec_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear CEC status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>flag</code>	specify which flag
<code>CEC_FLAG_BR</code>	Rx-byte data received
<code>CEC_FLAG_REND</code>	end of reception
<code>CEC_FLAG_RO</code>	RX overrun
<code>CEC_FLAG_BRE</code>	bit rising error
<code>CEC_FLAG_BPSE</code>	short bit period error
<code>CEC_FLAG_BPLE</code>	long bit period error
<code>CEC_FLAG_RAE</code>	Rx ACK error
<code>CEC_FLAG_ARBF</code>	arbitration lost
<code>CEC_FLAG_TBR</code>	Tx-byte data request
<code>CEC_FLAG_TEND</code>	transmission successfully end
<code>CEC_FLAG_TU</code>	Tx data buffer underrun
<code>CEC_FLAG_TERR</code>	Tx-error
<code>CEC_FLAG_TAERR</code>	Tx ACK error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* clear CEC_FLAG_BR status */
cec_flag_get (CEC_INT_BR);
  
```

cec_interrupt_flag_get

The description of `cec_interrupt_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-63. Function `cec_interrupt_flag_get`

Function name	cec_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus cec_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t flag);

Function descriptions	get CEC int flag and status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BR</i>	Rx-byte data received
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_REN_D</i>	end of reception
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_RO</i>	RX overrun
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BRE</i>	bit rising error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BPSE</i>	short bit period error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BPLE</i>	long bit period error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_RAE</i>	Rx ACK error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_ARBF</i>	arbitration lost
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TBR</i>	Tx-byte data request
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TEND</i>	transmission successfully end
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TU</i>	Tx data buffer underrun
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TERR</i>	Tx-error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TAER_R</i>	Tx ACK error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get CEC_INT_FLAG_BR status */

FlagStatus flag = reset;

flag = cec_interrupt_flag_get (CEC_INT_FLAG_BR);

```

cec_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `cec_interrupt_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-64. Function `cec_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	cec_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void cec_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear CEC int flag and status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BR</i>	Rx-byte data received

<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_REN</i>	end of reception
<i>D</i>	
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_RO</i>	RX overrun
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BRE</i>	bit rising error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BPSE</i>	short bit period error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_BPLE</i>	long bit period error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_RAE</i>	Rx ACK error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_ARBF</i>	arbitration lost
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TBR</i>	Tx-byte data request
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TEND</i>	transmission successfully end
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TU</i>	Tx data buffer underrun
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TERR</i>	Tx-error
<i>CEC_INT_FLAG_TAER</i>	Tx ACK error flag
<i>R</i>	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CEC_INT_FLAG_BR status */
cecc_interrupt_flag_clear(CEC_INT_FLAG_BR);
```

3.4. CMP

The general purpose CMP can work either standalone (all terminal are available on I/Os) or together with the timers. It can be used to wake up the MCU from low-power mode by an analog signal, provide a trigger source when an analog signal is in a certain condition, achieve some current control by working together with a PWM output of a timer and the DAC. The CMP registers are listed in chapter [3.4.1](#), the CMP firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.4.2](#).

3.4.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CMP registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-65. CMP registers

Registers	Descriptions
CMP_CS	CMP control and status register

3.4.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CMP firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-66. CMP firmware function

Function name	Function description
cmp_deinit	CMP deinit
cmp_mode_init	CMP mode init
cmp_output_init	CMP output init
cmp_enable	enable CMP
cmp_disable	disable CMP
cmp_switch_enable	enable the switch mode
cmp_switch_disable	disable the switch mode
cmp_window_enable	enable the window mode
cmp_window_disable	disable the window mode
cmp_lock_enable	lock the CMP
cmp_output_level_get	get output level

Enum cmp_enum

Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum

Member name	Function description
CMP0	comparator 0
CMP1	comparator 1

cmp_deinit

The description of cmp_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-68. Function cmp_deinit

Function name	cmp_deinit
Function prototype	void cmp_deinit(cmp_enum cmp_periph);
Function descriptions	CMP deinit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
cmp_periph	refer to enum Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize CMP0 */
cmp_deinit(CMP0);
```

cmp_mode_init

The description of cmp_mode_init is shown as below:

Table 3-69. Function cmp_mode_init

Function name	cmp_mode_init
Function prototype	void cmp_mode_init(cmp_enum cmp_periph, uint32_t operating_mode, uint32_t inverting_input, uint32_t output_hysteresis);
Function descriptions	CMP mode init
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
cmp_periph	refer to enum Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum
Input parameter{in}	
operating_mode	operating mode
CMP_MODE_HIGHSP EED	high speed mode
CMP_MODE_MIDDLE SPEED	medium speed mode
CMP_MODE_LOWSPE ED	low speed mode
CMP_MODE_VERYLO WSPEED	very-low speed mode
Input parameter{in}	
inverting_input	inverting input select
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_1_4VREFINT	VREFINT *1/4 input
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_1_2VREFINT	VREFINT *1/2 input
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_3_4VREFINT	VREFINT *3/4 input
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_VREFINT	VREFINT input
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_DAC0_OUT0	PA4 (DAC0_OUT0) input
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_PA5	PA5 input
CMP_INVERTING_INP UT_PA0_PA2	PA0 input for CMP0, PA2 input for CMP1
Input parameter{in}	
output_hysteresis	hysteresis level
CMP_HYSTERESIS_N O	output no hysteresis
CMP_HYSTERESIS_L	output low hysteresis

OW	
CMP_HYSTESIS_M IDLE	output middle hysteresis
CMP_HYSTESIS_HI GH	output high hysteresis
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize CMP0 mode */
cmp_mode_init(CMP0, CMP_MODE_HIGHSPEED, CMP_INVERTING_INPUT_1_4VREFI
NT, CMP_HYSTESIS_NO);
```

cmp_output_init

The description of cmp_output_init is shown as below:

Table 3-70. Function cmp_output_init

Function name	cmp_output_init
Function prototype	void cmp_output_init(cmp_enum cmp_periph, uint32_t output_selection, uint32_t output_polarity);
Function descriptions	CMP output init
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
cmp_periph	refer to enum Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum
output_selection	CMP output selection
CMP_OUTPUT_NO NE	CMP output none
CMP_OUTPUT_TIM ER0_BKIN	CMP output TIMER0 break input
CMP_OUTPUT_TIM ER0_IC0	CMP output TIMER0_CH0 input capture
CMP_OUTPUT_TIM ER0_OCPRECLR	CMP output TIMER0_OCPRE_CLR input
CMP_OUTPUT_TIM ER1_IC3	CMP output TIMER1_CH3 input capture
CMP_OUTPUT_TIM ER1_OCPRECLR	CMP output TIMER1_OCPRE_CLR input
CMP_OUTPUT_TIM ER2_IC0	CMP output TIMER2_CH0 input capture

<code>CMP_OUTPUT_TIMER2_OCPRECLR</code>	CMP output TIMER2 OCPRE_CLR input
Input parameter{in}	
<code>output_polarity</code>	CMP output polarity
<code>CMP_OUTPUT_POLARITY_INVERTED</code>	output is inverted
<code>CMP_OUTPUT_POLARITY_NONINVERTED</code>	output is not inverted
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize CMP0 output */

cmp_output_init(CMP0, CMP_OUTPUT_TIMER0_IC0, CMP_OUTPUT_POLARITY_NOINVERTED);
```

cmp_enable

The description of cmp_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-71. Function cmp_enable

Function name	cmp_enable
Function prototype	void cmp_enable(cmp_enum cmp_periph);
Function descriptions	enable CMP
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>cmp_periph</code>	refer to enum Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CMP0 */

cmp_enable(CMP0);
```

cmp_disable

The description of cmp_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-72. Function cmp_disable

Function name	cmp_disable
Function prototype	void cmp_disable(cmp_enum cmp_periph);
Function descriptions	disable CMP
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
cmp_periph	refer to enum Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CMP0 */
cmp_disable(CMP0);
```

cmp_switch_enable

The description of cmp_switch_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-73. Function cmp_switch_enable

Function name	cmp_switch_enable
Function prototype	void cmp_switch_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the switch mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the switch mode */
cmp_switch_enable();
```

cmp_switch_disable

The description of cmp_switch_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-74. Function cmp_switch_disable

Function name	cmp_switch_disable
----------------------	--------------------

Function prototype	void cmp_switch_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the switch mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the switch mode */

cmp_switch_disable();
```

cmp_window_enable

The description of cmp_window_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-75. Function cmp_window_enable

Function name	cmp_window_enable
Function prototype	void cmp_window_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the window mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the window mode */

cmp_window_enable();
```

cmp_window_disable

The description of cmp_window_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-76. Function cmp_window_disable

Function name	cmp_window_disable
Function prototype	void cmp_window_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the window mode

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the window mode */

cmp_window_disable();
```

cmp_lock_enable

The description of cmp_lock_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-77. Function cmp_lock_enable

Function name	cmp_lock_enable
Function prototype	void cmp_lock_enable(cmp_enum cmp_periph);
Function descriptions	lock the CMP
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
cmp_periph	refer to enum Table 3-67. Enum cmp_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock CMP0 register */

cmp_lock_enable(CMP0);
```

cmp_output_level_get

The description of cmp_output_level_get is shown as below:

Table 3-78. Function cmp_output_level_get

Function name	cmp_output_level_get
Function prototype	uint32_t cmp_output_level_get(cmp_enum cmp_periph);
Function descriptions	get output level
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
cmp_periph	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the output level
CMP_OUTPUTLEVEL_HIGH	comparator output high
CMP_OUTPUTLEVEL_LOW	comparator output low

Example:

```
uint32_t level;  
  
/* get CMP0 output level */  
  
level = cmp_output_level_get(CMP0);
```

3.5. CRC

A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is an error-detecting code commonly used in digital networks and storage devices to detect accidental changes to raw data. The CRC registers are listed in chapter [3.5.1](#), the CRC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.5.2](#).

3.5.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CRC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-79. CRC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CRC_DATA	CRC data register
CRC_FDATA	CRC free data register
CRC_CTL	CRC control register
CRC_IDATA	CRC initialization data register
CRC_POLY	CRC polynomial register

3.5.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CRC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-80. CRC firmware function

Function name	Function description
crc_deinit	deinit CRC calculation unit
crc_reverse_output_data_enable	enable the reverse operation of output data

Function name	Function description
crc_reverse_output_data_disable	disable the reverse operation of output data
crc_data_register_reset	reset data register to the value of initializaiton data register
crc_data_register_read	read the data register
crc_free_data_register_read	read the free data register
crc_free_data_register_write	write the free data register
crc_init_data_register_write	write the initial value register
crc_input_data_reverse_config	configure the CRC input data function
crc_polynomial_size_set	onfigure the CRC size of polynomial function
crc_polynomial_set	configure the CRC polynomial value function
crc_single_data_calculate	CRC calculate a 32-bit data
crc_block_data_calculate	CRC calculate a 32-bit data array

crc_deinit

The description of `crc_deinit` is shown as below:

Table 3-81. Function `crc_deinit`

Function name	crc_deinit
Function prototype	void crc_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinit CRC calculation unit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset crc */
crc_deinit();
```

crc_reverse_output_data_enable

The description of `crc_reverse_output_data_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-82. Function `crc_reverse_output_data_enable`

Function name	crc_reverse_output_data_enable
Function prototype	void crc_reverse_output_data_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable the reverse operation of output data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CRC reverse operation of output data */
```

```
crc_reverse_output_data_enable();
```

crc_reverse_output_data_disable

The description of `crc_reverse_output_data_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-83. Function `crc_reverse_output_data_disable`

Function name	crc_reverse_output_data_disable
Function prototype	void crc_reverse_output_data_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable the reverse operation of output data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable crc reverse operation of output data */
```

```
crc_reverse_output_data_disable();
```

crc_data_register_reset

The description of `crc_data_register_reset` is shown as below:

Table 3-84. Function `crc_data_register_reset`

Function name	crc_data_register_reset
Function prototype	void crc_data_register_reset(void);
Function descriptions	reset data register to the value of initializaiton data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset crc data register */

crc_data_register_reset();
```

crc_data_register_read

The description of `crc_data_register_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-85. Function `crc_data_register_read`

Function name	<code>crc_data_register_read</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint32_t crc_data_register_read(void);</code>
Function descriptions	read the data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	32-bit value of the data register (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read crc data register */

uint32_t crc_value = 0;

crc_value = crc_data_register_read();
```

crc_free_data_register_read

The description of `crc_free_data_register_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-86. Function `crc_free_data_register_read`

Function name	<code>crc_free_data_register_read</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint8_t crc_free_data_register_read(void);</code>
Function descriptions	read the free data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	8-bit value of the free data register (0-0xFF)

Example:

```
/* read crc free data register */

uint8_t crc_value = 0;

crc_value = crc_free_data_register_read();
```

crc_free_data_register_write

The description of `crc_free_data_register_write` is shown as below:

Table 3-87. Function `crc_free_data_register_write`

Function name	crc_free_data_register_write
Function prototype	void crc_free_data_register_write(uint8_t free_data);
Function descriptions	write the free data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
free_data	specify 8-bit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write the free data register */

crc_free_data_register_write(0x11);
```

crc_init_data_register_write

The description of `crc_init_data_register_write` is shown as below:

Table 3-88. Function `crc_init_data_register_write`

Function name	crc_init_data_register_write
Function prototype	void crc_init_data_register_write(uint32_t init_data)
Function descriptions	write the initializaiton data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
init_data	specify 32-bit data

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write crc initializaiton data register */

crc_init_data_register_write (0x11223344);
```

crc_input_data_reverse_config

The description of **crc_input_data_reverse_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-89. Function **crc_input_data_reverse_config**

Function name	crc_input_data_reverse_config
Function prototype	void crc_input_data_reverse_config(uint32_t data_reverse)
Function descriptions	configure the crc input data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
data_reverse	specify input data reverse function
CRC_INPUT_DATA_N OT	input data is not reversed
CRC_INPUT_DATA_B YTE	input data is reversed on 8 bits
CRC_INPUT_DATA_H ALFWORD	input data is reversed on 16 bits
CRC_INPUT_DATA_W WORD	input data is reversed on 32 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the crc input data */

crc_input_data_reverse_config (CRC_INPUT_DATA_WORD);
```

crc_polynomial_size_set

The description of **crc_polynomial_size_set** is shown as below:

Table 3-90. Function **crc_polynomial_size_set**

Function name	crc_polynomial_size_set
----------------------	-------------------------

Function prototype	void crc_polynomial_size_set(uint32_t poly_size)
Function descriptions	configure the CRC size of polynomial function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
<i>Input parameter{in}</i>	
poly_size	size of polynomial
CRC_CTL_PS_32	32-bit polynomial for CRC calculation
CRC_CTL_PS_16	16-bit polynomial for CRC calculation
CRC_CTL_PS_8	8-bit polynomial for CRC calculation
CRC_CTL_PS_7	7-bit polynomial for CRC calculation
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CRC polynomial size*/
crc_polynomial_size_set (CRC_CTL_PS_7);
```

crc_polynomial_set

The description of **crc_polynomial_set** is shown as below:

Table 3-91. Function **crc_polynomial_set**

Function name	crc_polynomial_set
Function prototype	void crc_polynomial_set(uint32_t poly)
Function descriptions	configure the CRC polynomial value function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
<i>Input parameter{in}</i>	
poly	configurable polynomial value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CRC polynomial value */
crc_polynomial_set (0x11223344);
```

crc_single_data_calculate

The description of **crc_single_data_calculate** is shown as below:

Table 3-92. Function crc_single_data_calculate

Function name	crc_single_data_calculate
Function prototype	uint32_t crc_single_data_calculate(uint32_t sdata);
Function descriptions	CRC calculate a 32-bit data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sdata	specify 32-bit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	32-bit CRC calculate value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data */

uint32_t val = 0, valcrc = 0;

val = (uint32_t)0xabcd1234;

rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_CRC);

valcrc = crc_single_data_calculate(val);
```

crc_block_data_calculate

The description of crc_block_data_calculate is shown as below:

Table 3-93. Function crc_block_data_calculate

Function name	crc_block_data_calculate
Function prototype	uint32_t crc_block_data_calculate(uint32_t array[], uint32_t size);
Function descriptions	calculate the CRC value of an array of 32-bit values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
array	pointer to an array of 32 bit data words
Input parameter{in}	
size	size of the array
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	32-bit CRC calculate value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data array */
```

```

#define BUFFER_SIZE    6

uint32_t valcrc = 0;

static const uint32_t data_buffer[BUFFER_SIZE] = {
0x00001111, 0x00002222, 0x00003333, 0x00004444, 0x00005555, 0x00006666};

rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_CRC);

valcrc = crc_block_data_calculate((uint32_t *) data_buffer, BUFFER_SIZE);
  
```

3.6. CTC

The Clock Trim Controller (CTC) is used to trim internal 48MHz RC oscillator (IRC48M) automatically by hardware. The CTC registers are listed in chapter [3.6.1](#), the CTC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.6.2](#).

3.6.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-94. CTC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CTC_CTL0	CTC control register 0
CTC_CTL1	CTC control register 1
CTC_STAT	CTC status register
CTC_INTC	CTC interrupt clear register

3.6.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-95. CTC firmware function

Function name	Function description
ctc_deinit	reset ctc clock trim controller
ctc_refsource_polarity_config	configure reference signal source polarity
ctc_refsource_signal_select	select reference signal source
ctc_refsource_prescaler_config	configure reference signal source prescaler
ctc_clock_limit_value_config	configure clock trim base limit value
ctc_counter_reload_value_config	configure CTC counter reload value
ctc_counter_enable	enable CTC trim counter
ctc_counter_disable	disable CTC trim counter
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config	configure the IRC48M trim value
ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate	generate software reference source sync pulse

Function name	Function description
ctc.hardware_trim_mode_config	configure hardware automatically trim mode
ctc.counter_capture_value_read	read CTC counter capture value when reference sync pulse occurred
ctc.counter_direction_read	read CTC trim counter direction when reference sync pulse occurred
ctc.counter_reload_value_read	read CTC counter reload value
ctc irc48m_trim_value_read	read the IRC48M trim value
ctc_interrupt_enable	enable the CTC interrupt
ctc_interrupt_disable	disable the CTC interrupt
ctc_flag_get	get CTC flag
ctc_flag_clear	clear CTC flag
ctc_interrupt_flag_get	get CTC interrupt flag
ctc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear CTC interrupt flag

ctc_deinit

The description of `ctc_deinit` is shown as below:

Table 3-96. Function `ctc_deinit`

Function name	ctc_deinit
Function prototype	void ctc_deinit (void)
Function descriptions	reset ctc clock trim controller
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset CTC */
ctc_deinit();
```

ctc_refsource_polarity_config

The description of `ctc_refsource_polarity_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-97. Function `ctc_refsource_polarity_config`

Function name	ctc_refsource_polarity_config
Function prototype	void ctc_refsource_polarity_config(uint32_t polarity);
Function descriptions	configure reference signal source polarity

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
polarity	reference signal source polarity
CTC_REFRESOURCE_POLARITY_FALLING	reference signal source polarity is falling edge
CTC_REFRESOURCE_POLARITY_RISING	reference signal source polarity is rising edge
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set reference source polarity */
ctc_refresource_polarity_config (CTC_REFRESOURCE_POLARITY_RISING);
```

ctc_refresource_signal_select

The description of ctc_refresource_signal_select is shown as below:

Table 3-98. Function ctc_refresource_signal_select

Function name	ctc_refresource_signal_select
Function prototype	void ctc_refresource_signal_select(uint32_t refs);
Function descriptions	select reference signal source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
refs	reference signal source
CTC_REFRESOURCE_GPIO	GPIO is selected
CTC_REFRESOURCE_LXTAL	LXTAL is selected
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reference signal selection */
ctc_refresource_signal_select (CTC_REFRESOURCE_LXTAL);
```

ctc_refsource_prescaler_config

The description of ctc_refsource_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-99. Function ctc_refsource_prescaler_config

Function name	ctc_refsource_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void ctc_refsource_prescaler_config(uint32_t prescaler);
Function descriptions	configure reference signal source prescaler
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	Prescaler factor
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_OFF</i>	reference signal not divided
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV2</i>	reference signal divided by 2
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV4</i>	reference signal divided by 4
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV8</i>	reference signal divided by 8
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV16</i>	reference signal divided by 16
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV32</i>	reference signal divided by 32
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV64</i>	reference signal divided by 64
<i>CTC_REFRESOURCE_P_SC_DIV128</i>	reference signal divided by 128
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure reference signal source prescaler */
ctc_refsource_prescaler_config(CTC_REFRESOURCE_PSC_DIV2);
```

ctc_clock_limit_value_config

The description of ctc_clock_limit_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-100. Function ctc_clock_limit_value_config

Function name	ctc_clock_limit_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_clock_limit_value_config(uint8_t limit_value);

Function descriptions	configure clock trim base limit value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
limit_value	0x00 - 0xFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure clock trim base limit value */

ctc_clock_limit_value_config (0x1F);

```

ctc_counter_reload_value_config

The description of **ctc_counter_reload_value_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-101. Function ctc_counter_reload_value_config

Function name	ctc_counter_reload_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_reload_value_config(uint16_t reload_value);
Function descriptions	configure CTC counter reload value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
reload_value	0x0000 - 0xFFFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure CTC counter reload value */

ctc_counter_reload_value_config (0x00FF);

```

ctc_counter_enable

The description of **ctc_counter_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-102. Function ctc_counter_enable

Function name	ctc_counter_enable
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable CTC counter
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC trim counter*/
ctc_counter_enable();
```

ctc_counter_disable

The description of `ctc_counter_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-103. Function `ctc_counter_disable`

Function name	ctc_counter_disable
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable CTC counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CTC trim counter */
ctc_counter_disable();
```

ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config

The description of `ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-104. Function `ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config`

Function name	ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config(uint8_t trim_value);
Function descriptions	configure the IRC48M trim value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

trim_value	0~63
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* IRC48M trim value configuration */

ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config (0x01);
```

ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate

The description of `ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate` is shown as below:

Table 3-105. Function `ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate`

Function name	ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate
Function prototype	void ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate (void)
Function descriptions	generate software reference source sync pulse
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* generate reference source sync pulse */

ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate ();
```

ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config

The description of `ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-106. Function `ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config`

Function name	ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config
Function prototype	void ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config(uint32_t hardmode);
Function descriptions	configure hardware automatically trim mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
hardmode	hardware automatically trim mode enable or disable
CTC_HARDWARE_TRI	hardware automatically trim mode enable

<i>M_MODE_ENABLE</i>		
<i>CTC_HARDWARE_TRI</i>	hardware automatically trim mode disable	
<i>M_MODE_DISABLE</i>	Output parameter{out}	
-	-	
Return value		
-	-	

Example:

```
/* enable CTC hardware trim */

ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config (CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_ENABLE);
```

ctc_counter_capture_value_read

The description of `ctc_counter_capture_value_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-107. Function `ctc_counter_capture_value_read`

Function name	ctc_counter_capture_value_read
Function prototype	uint16_t ctc_counter_capture_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC counter capture value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	the 16-bit CTC counter capture value

Example:

```
/* read CTC counter capture value */

uint16_t ctc_value = 0;

ctc_value = ctc_counter_capture_value_read();
```

ctc_counter_direction_read

The description of `ctc_counter_direction_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-108. Function `ctc_counter_direction_read`

Function name	ctc_counter_direction_read
Function prototype	FlagStatus ctc_counter_direction_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC trim counter direction
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET(down-counting) / RESET(up-counting)

Example:

```
/* read ctc counter direction */

FlagStatus ctc_direction = SET;

ctc_direction = ctc_counter_direction_read();
```

ctc_counter_reload_value_read

The description of `ctc_counter_reload_value_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-109. Function `ctc_counter_reload_value_read`

Function name	ctc_counter_reload_value_read
Function prototype	uint16_t ctc_counter_reload_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC counter reload value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	the 16-bit CTC counter reload value (0x0000 - 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read CTC counter reload value */

uint16_t ctc_reload_value = 0;

ctc_reload_value = ctc_counter_reload_value_read();
```

ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read

The description of `ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-110. Function `ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read`

Function name	ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read
Function prototype	uint8_t ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read the IRC48M trim value

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	the 6-bit IRC48M trim value (0-63)

Example:

```
/* read the IRC48M trim value */

uint8_t ctc_trim_value = 0;

ctc_trim_value = ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read();
```

ctc_interrupt_enable

The description of **ctc_interrupt_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-111. Function `ctc_interrupt_enable`

Function name	ctc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void ctc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable the CTC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	CTC interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_EREF</i>	expect reference interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC clock trim OK interrupt */

ctc_interrupt_enable (CTC_INT_CKOK);
```

ctc_interrupt_disable

The description of **ctc_interrupt_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-112. Function ctc_interrupt_disable

Function name	ctc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void ctc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable the CTC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	CTC interrupt
CTC_INT_CKOK	clock trim OK interrupt
CTC_INT_CKWARN	clock trim warning interrupt
CTC_INT_ERR	error interrupt
CTC_INT_EREF	expect reference interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CTC clock trim OK interrupt */
ctc_interrupt_disable (CTC_INT_CKOK);
```

ctc_flag_get

The description of ctc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-113. Function ctc_flag_get

Function name	ctc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus ctc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get CTC status flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CTC status flag
CTC_FLAG_CKOK	clock trim OK interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_CKWARN	clock trim warning interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_EREF	expect reference interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_CKERR	clock trim error bit
CTC_FLAG_REFMISS	reference sync pulse miss flag
CTC_FLAG_TRIMERR	trim value error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

FlagStatus	SET or RESET
-------------------	--------------

Example:

```
/* get CTC flag status */
FlagStatus state = ctc_flag_get (CTC_FLAG_CKOK);
```

ctc_flag_clear

The description of **ctc_flag_clear** is shown as below:

Table 3-114. Function **ctc_flag_clear**

Function name	ctc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void ctc_flag_clear (uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear CTC status flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CTC status flag
CTC_FLAG_CKOK	clock trim OK interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_CKWARN	clock trim warning interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_EREF	expect reference interrupt flag
CTC_FLAG_CKERR	clock trim error bit
CTC_FLAG_REFMISS	reference sync pulse miss flag
CTC_FLAG_TRIMERR	trim value error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CTC flag status */
ctc_flag_clear (CTC_FLAG_CKOK);
```

ctc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of **ctc_interrupt_flag_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-115. Function **ctc_interrupt_flag_get**

Function name	ctc_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus ctc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	get CTC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	CTC interrupt flag
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKO_K	clock trim OK interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKW_ARN	clock trim warning interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_EREF	expect reference interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKE_RR	clock trim error bit interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_REF_MISS	reference sync pulse miss interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_TRIM_ERR	trim value error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get CTC interrupt flag status */
FlagStatus state = ctc_interrupt_flag_get (CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK);
```

ctc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `ctc_interrupt_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-116. Function `ctc_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	ctc_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void ctc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear CTC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	CTC interrupt flag
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKO_K	clock trim OK interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKW_ARN	clock trim warning interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_EREF	expect reference interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKE_RR	clock trim error bit interrupt

<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_REF MISS</i>	reference sync pulse miss interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_TRIM ERR</i>	trim value error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/*clear CTC interrupt flag status */
ctc_interrupt_flag_clear (CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK);
```

3.7. DAC

The Digital-to-analog converter converts 12-bit digital data to a voltage on the external pins. The DAC registers are listed in chapter [3.7.1](#) the DAC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.7.2](#).

3.7.1. Peripheral register description

DAC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-117. DAC Registers

Register	Descriptions
DAC_CTL0	DACx control register 0
DAC_SWT	DACx software trigger register
DAC_OUT0_R12DH	DACx_OUT0 12-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT0_L12DH	DACx_OUT0 12-bit left-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT0_R8DH	DACx_OUT0 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC_OUT0_DO	DACx_OUT0 data output register
DAC_STAT0	DACx status register 0

3.7.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DAC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-118. DAC firmware functions

Function name	Function description
dac_deinit	deinitialize DAC
dac_enable	enable DAC
dac_disable	disable DAC
dac_dma_enable	enable DAC DMA function

Function name	Function description
dac_dma_disable	disable DAC DMA function
dac_output_buffer_enable	enable DAC output buffer
dac_output_buffer_disable	disable DAC output buffer
dac_output_value_get	get DAC output value
dac_data_set	set DAC data holding register value
dac_trigger_enable	enable DAC trigger
dac_trigger_disable	disable DAC trigger
dac_trigger_source_config	configure DAC trigger source
dac_software_trigger_enable	enable DAC software trigger
dac_wave_mode_config	configure DAC wave mode
dac_lfsr_noise_config	configure DAC LFSR noise mode
dac_triangle_noise_config	configure DAC triangle noise mode
dac_flag_get	get DAC flag
dac_flag_clear	clear DAC flag
dac_interrupt_enable	enable DAC interrupt
dac_interrupt_disable	disable DAC interrupt
dac_interrupt_flag_get	get DAC interrupt flag
dac_interrupt_flag_clear	clear DAC interrupt flag

dac_deinit

The description of dac_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-119. Function dac_deinit

Function name	dac_deinit
Function prototype	void dac_deinit(uint32_t dac_periph);
Function descriptions	deinitialize DAC
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize DAC0 */
dac_deinit(DAC0);
```

dac_enable

The description of **dac_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-120. Function dac_enable

Function name	dac_enable
Function prototype	void dac_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	enable DAC
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 */
dac_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_disable

The description of **dac_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-121. Function dac_disable

Function name	dac_disable
Function prototype	void dac_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	disable DAC
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 */
dac_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_dma_enable

The description of **dac_dma_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-122. Function dac_dma_enable

Function name	dac_dma_enable
Function prototype	void dac_dma_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	enable DAC DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
<i>DAC_OUTx</i>	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 DMA function */
dac_dma_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_dma_disable

The description of **dac_dma_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-123. Function dac_dma_disable

Function name	dac_dma_disable
Function prototype	void dac_dma_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	disable DAC DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)

Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 DMA function */

dac_dma_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_output_buffer_enable

The description of **dac_output_buffer_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-124. Function dac_output_buffer_enable

Function name	dac_output_buffer_enable
Function prototype	void dac_output_buffer_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	enable DAC output buffer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 output buffer */

dac_output_buffer_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_output_buffer_disable

The description of **dac_output_buffer_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-125. Function dac_output_buffer_disable

Function name	dac_output_buffer_disable
Function prototype	void dac_output_buffer_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);

Function descriptions	disable DAC output buffer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 output buffer */

dac_output_buffer_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_output_value_get

The description of **dac_output_value_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-126. Function dac_output_value_get

Function name	dac_output_value_get
Function prototype	uint16_t dac_output_value_get(uint32_t dac_periph, dac_out);
Function descriptions	get DAC output value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	DAC output data (0~4095)

Example:

```
/* get the DAC0_OUT0 last data output value */

uint16_t data;
```

```
data = dac_output_value_get(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_data_set

The description of **dac_data_set** is shown as below:

Table 3-127. Function **dac_data_set**

Function name	dac_data_set
Function prototype	void dac_data_set(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t dac_align, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	set DAC data holding register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_align	DAC data alignment mode
DAC_ALIGN_12B_R	12-bit right-aligned data
DAC_ALIGN_12B_L	12-bit left-aligned data
DAC_ALIGN_8B_R	8-bit right-aligned data
Input parameter{in}	
data	data to be loaded (0~4095)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set DAC0_OUT0 data holding register value */
dac_data_set(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_ALIGN_8B_R, 0xFF);
```

dac_trigger_enable

The description of **dac_trigger_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-128. Function **dac_trigger_enable**

Function name	dac_trigger_enable
Function prototype	void dac_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	enable DAC trigger
Precondition	-

The called functions		-
Input parameter{in}		
dac_periph		DAC peripheral
DACx		DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}		
dac_out		DAC output
DAC_OUTx		DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Output parameter{out}		
-		-
Return value		
-		-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 trigger */
dac_trigger_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_trigger_disable

The description of **dac_trigger_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-129. Function dac_trigger_disable

Function name	dac_trigger_disable	
Function prototype	void dac_trigger_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);	
Function descriptions	disable DAC trigger	
Precondition	-	
The called functions	-	
Input parameter{in}		
dac_periph	DAC peripheral	
DACx	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)	
Input parameter{in}		
dac_out	DAC output	
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)	
Output parameter{out}		
-		-
Return value		
-		-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0_OUT0 trigger */
dac_trigger_disable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_trigger_source_config

The description of dac_trigger_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-130. Function dac_trigger_source_config

Function name	dac_trigger_source_config
Function prototype	void dac_trigger_source_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t triggersource);
Function descriptions	configure DAC trigger source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
triggersource	external trigger of DAC
DAC_TRIGGER_T5_TRGO	TIMER5 TRGO
DAC_TRIGGER_T14_TRGO	TIMER14 TRGO
DAC_TRIGGER_T2_TRGO	TIMER2 TRGO
DAC_TRIGGER_T1_TRGO	TIMER1 TRGO
DAC_TRIGGER EXTI_9	EXTI interrupt line9 event
DAC_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE	software trigger
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 trigger source */
dac_trigger_source_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_TRIGGER_T1_TRGO);
```

dac_software_trigger_enable

The description of dac_software_trigger_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-131. Function dac_software_trigger_enable

Function name	dac_software_trigger_enable
Function prototype	void dac_software_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out);
Function descriptions	enable DAC software trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection(x = 0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0_OUT0 software trigger */

dac_software_trigger_enable(DAC0, DAC_OUT0);
```

dac_wave_mode_config

The description of `dac_wave_mode_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-132. Function dac_wave_mode_config

Function name	dac_wave_mode_config
Function prototype	void dac_wave_mode_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t wave_mode);
Function descriptions	configure DAC wave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
wave_mode	DAC wave mode
DAC_WAVE_DISABLE	wave mode disable

<i>DAC_WAVE_MODE_LFSR</i>	LFSR noise mode
<i>DAC_WAVE_MODE_TRIANGLE</i>	triangle noise mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 wave mode */
dac_wave_mode_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_WAVE_DISABLE);
```

dac_lfsr_noise_config

The description of **dac_lfsr_noise_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-133. Function dac_lfsr_noise_config

Function name	dac_lfsr_noise_config
Function prototype	void dac_lfsr_noise_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t unmask_bits);
Function descriptions	configure DAC LFSR noise mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
unmask_bits	LFSR noise unmask bits
DAC_LFSR_BIT0	unmask the LFSR bit0
DAC_LFSR_BITSx_0	unmask the LFSR bits [x:0] (x = 1,2,3..11)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 LFSR noise mode */
dac_lfsr_noise_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_LFSR_BIT0);
```

dac_triangle_noise_config

The description of dac_triangle_noise_config is shown as below:

Table 3-134. Function dac_triangle_noise_config

Function name	dac_triangle_noise_config
Function prototype	void dac_triangle_noise_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint8_t dac_out, uint32_t amplitude);
Function descriptions	configure DAC triangle noise mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_out	DAC output
DAC_OUTx	DAC output channel selection (x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
amplitude	the amplitude of the triangle
DAC_TRIANGLE_AMPLITUDE <i>UDE_x</i>	$x = 2^n - 1$ ($n = 1..12$)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0_OUT0 triangle noise mode */
dac_triangle_noise_config(DAC0, DAC_OUT0, DAC_TRIANGLE_AMPLITUDE_1);
```

dac_flag_get

The description of dac_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-135. Function dac_flag_get

Function name	dac_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus dac_flag_get(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get DAC flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	

flag	the DAC status flags
<i>DAC_FLAG_DDUDR0</i>	DACx_OUT0 DMA underrun flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	the state of DAC bit (SET or RESET)

Example:

```
/* get DAC0 flag */

FlagStatus flag;

flag = dac_flag_get(DAC0, DAC_FLAG_DDUDR0);
```

dac_flag_clear

The description of **dac_flag_clear** is shown as below:

Table 3-136. Function dac_flag_clear

Function name	dac_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dac_flag_clear(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear DAC flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
flag	DAC flag
<i>DAC_FLAG_DDUDR0</i>	DACx_OUT0 DMA underrun flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear DAC0 flag */

dac_flag_clear(DAC0, DAC_FLAG_DDUDR0);
```

dac_interrupt_enable

The description of **dac_interrupt_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-137. Function dac_interrupt_enable

Function name	dac_interrupt_enable
----------------------	----------------------

Function prototype	void dac_interrupt_enable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable DAC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the DAC interrupt
DAC_INT_DDUDR0	DACx_OUT0 DMA underrun interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 interrupt */

dac_interrupt_enable (DAC0, DAC_INT_DDUDRIE0);
```

dac_interrupt_disable

The description of **dac_interrupt_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-138. Function `dac_interrupt_disable`

Function name	dac_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void dac_interrupt_disable(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable DAC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the DAC interrupt
DAC_INT_DDUDR0	DACx_OUT0 DMA underrun interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 interrupt */

dac_interrupt_disable (DAC0, DAC_INT_DDUDRIE0);
```

dac_interrupt_flag_get

The description of dac_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-139. Function dac_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	dac_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus dac_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	get DAC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	DAC interrupt flag
DAC_INT_FLAG_DDUDR0	DACx_OUT0 DMA underrun interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	the state of DAC interrupt flag(SET or RESET)

Example:

```
/* get DAC0 interrupt flag */
flag = dac_interrupt_flag_get(DAC0, DAC_INT_FLAG_DDUDR0);
```

dac_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of dac_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-140. Function dac_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	dac_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dac_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear DAC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	DAC peripheral
DACx	DAC peripheral selection(x = 0)
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	DAC interrupt flag
DAC_INT_FLAG_DDUDR0	DACx_OUT0 DMA underrun interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear DAC0 interrupt flag */

dac_interrupt_flag_clear(DAC0, DAC_INT_FLAG_DDUDR0);
```

3.8. **DBG**

The DBG hold unit helps debugger to debug power saving mode. The DBG registers are listed in chapter [3.8.1](#), the DBG firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.8.2](#).

3.8.1. **Descriptions of Peripheral registers**

DBG registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-141. DBG Registers

Registers	Descriptions
DBG_ID	DBG ID code register
DBG_CTL0	DBG control register 0
DBG_CTL1	DBG control register 1

3.8.2. **Descriptions of Peripheral functions**

DBG firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-142. DBG firmware function

Function name	Function description
dbg_deinit	deinitialize the DBG
dbg_id_get	read DBG_ID code register
dbg_low_power_enable	enable low power behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_low_power_disable	disable low power behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_periph_enable	enable peripheral behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_periph_disable	disable peripheral behavior when the MCU is in debug mode

Enum **dbg_periph_enum**

Table 3-143. Enum dbg_periph_enum

Member name	Function description
DBG_FWDGT_HOLD	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_WWDGT_HOLD	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_TIMER0_HOLD	hold TIMER0 counter when core is halted

Member name	Function description
DBG_TIMER1_HOLD	hold TIMER1 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER2_HOLD	hold TIMER2 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER5_HOLD	hold TIMER5 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER13_HOLD	hold TIMER13 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER14_HOLD	hold TIMER14 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER15_HOLD	hold TIMER15 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER16_HOLD	hold TIMER16 counter when core is halted
DBG_I2C0_HOLD	hold I2C0 smbus when core is halted
DBG_I2C1_HOLD	hold I2C1 smbus when core is halted
DBG_RTC_HOLD	hold RTC calendar and wakeup counter when core is halted

dbg_deinit

The description of dbg_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-144. Function dbg_deinit

Function name	dbg_deinit
Function prototype	void dbg_deinit (void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the DBG
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the DBG*/
dbg_deinit();
```

dbg_id_get

The description of dbg_id_get is shown as below:

Table 3-145. Function dbg_id_get

Function name	dbg_id_get
Function prototype	uint32_t dbg_id_get(void);
Function descriptions	read DBG_ID code register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	DBG_ID code (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read DBG_ID code register */
```

```
uint32_t id_value = 0;
```

```
id_value = dbg_id_get();
```

dbg_low_power_enable

The description of `dbg_low_power_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-146. Function `dbg_low_power_enable`

Function name	dbg_low_power_enable
Function prototype	void dbg_low_power_enable(uint32_t dbg_low_power);
Function descriptions	Enable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_low_power	low power mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP	keep debugger connection during sleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_DEEPSLEEP	keep debugger connection during deepsleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_STANDBY	keep debugger connection during standby mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
```

```
dbg_low_power_enable(DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP);
```

dbg_low_power_disable

The description of `dbg_low_power_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-147. Function dbg_low_power_disable

Function name	dbg_low_power_disable
Function prototype	void dbg_low_power_disable(uint32_t dbg_low_power);
Function descriptions	Disable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_low_power	low power mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP	keep debugger connection during sleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_DEEPSLEEP	keep debugger connection during deepsleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_STANDBY	keep debugger connection during standby mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */

dbg_low_power_disable(DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP);
```

dbg_periph_enable

The description of dbg_periph_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-148. Function dbg_periph_enable

Function name	dbg_periph_enable
Function prototype	void dbg_periph_enable(dbg_periph_enum dbg_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_periph	Peripheral refer to Table 3-143. Enum dbg_periph_enum
DBG_FWDGT_HOLD	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_WWDGT_HOLD	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_TIMERx_HOLD	x=0,1,2,5,13,14,15,16, hold TIMERx counter when core is halted
DBG_I2Cx_HOLD	x=0,1, hold I2Cx smbus when core is halted
DBG_RTC_HOLD	hold RTC counter when core is halted
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */

dbg_periph_enable(DBG_TIMER0_HOLD);
```

dbg_periph_disable

The description of dbg_periph_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-149. Function dbg_periph_disable

Function name	dbg_periph_disable
Function prototype	void dbg_periph_disable(dbg_periph_enum dbg_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_periph	peripheral refer to Table 3-143. Enum dbg_periph enum
<i>DBG_FWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_WWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_TIMERx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1,2,5,13,14,15,16, hold TIMERx counter when core is halted
<i>DBG_I2Cx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold I2Cx smbus when core is halted
<i>DBG_RTC_HOLD</i>	hold RTC counter when core is halted
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */

dbg_periph_disable(DBG_TIMER0_HOLD);
```

3.9. DMA

The direct memory access (DMA) controller provides a hardware method of transferring data between peripherals and/or memory without intervention from the CPU, thereby freeing up bandwidth for other system functions. The DMA registers are listed in chapter [3.9.1](#), the DMA firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.9.2](#).

3.9.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DMA registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-150. DMA Registers

Registers	Descriptions
DMA_INTF	Interrupt flag register
DMA_INTC	Interrupt flag clear register
DMA_CHxCTL (x=0..6)	Channel x control register
DMA_CHxCNT (x=0..6)	Channel x counter register
DMA_CHxPADDR (x=0..6)	Channel x peripheral base address register
DMA_CHxMADDR (x=0..6)	Channel x memory base address register

3.9.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DMA firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-151. DMA firmware function

Function name	Function description
dma_deinit	deinitialize DMA a channel registers
dma_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of DMA struct with the default values
dma_init	initialize DMA channel
dma_circulation_enable	enable DMA circulation mode
dma_circulation_disable	disable DMA circulation mode
dma_memory_to_memory_enable	enable memory to memory mode
dma_memory_to_memory_disable	disable memory to memory mode
dma_channel_enable	enable DMA channel
dma_channel_disable	disable DMA channel
dma_periph_address_config	set DMA peripheral base address
dma_memory_address_config	set DMA memory base address
dma_transfer_number_config	set the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
dma_transfer_number_get	get the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
dma_priority_config	configure priority level of DMA channel
dma_memory_width_config	configure transfer data size of memory
dma_periph_width_config	configure transfer data size of peripheral
dma_memory_increase_enable	enable next address increasement algorithm of memory
dma_memory_increase_disable	disable next address increasement algorithm of memory
dma_periph_increase_enable	enable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
dma_periph_increase_disable	disable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
dma_transfer_direction_config	configure the direction of data transfer on the channel
dma_flag_get	check DMA flag is set or not

Function name	Function description
dma_flag_clear	clear DMA a channel flag
dma_interrupt_enable	enable DMA interrupt
dma_interrupt_disable	disable DMA interrupt
dma_interrupt_flag_get	check DMA flag and interrupt enable bit is set or not
dma_interrupt_flag_clear	clear DMA a channel flag

dma_channel_enum

Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum

Member name	Function description
DMA_CH0	DMA Channel0
DMA_CH1	DMA Channel1
DMA_CH2	DMA Channel2
DMA_CH3	DMA Channel3
DMA_CH4	DMA Channel4
DMA_CH5	DMA Channel5
DMA_CH6	DMA Channel6

Structure dma_parameter_struct

Table 3-153. Structure dma_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
periph_addr	peripheral base address
periph_width	transfer data size of peripheral
periph_inc	peripheral increasing mode
memory_addr	memory base address
memory_width	transfer data size of memory
memory_inc	memory increasing mode
direction	channel data transfer direction
number	channel transfer number
priority	channel priority level

dma_deinit

The description of dma_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-154. Function dma_deinit

Function name	dma_deinit
Function prototype	void dma_deinit(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	deinitialize DMA a channel registers
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
<i>DMA_CHx(x=0..6)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA channel0 initialize */

dma_deinit(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_struct_para_init

The description of **dma_struct_para_init** is shown as below:

Table 3-155. Function dma_struct_para_init

Function name	dma_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void dma_struct_para_init(dma_parameter_struct* init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of DMA struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-153. Structure dma_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the parameters of DMA */

dma_parameter_struct dma_init_struct;

dma_struct_para_init(&dma_init_struct);
```

dma_init

The description of **dma_init** is shown as below:

Table 3-156. Function dma_init

Function name	dma_init
Function prototype	void dma_init(dma_channel_enum channelx, dma_parameter_struct init_struct);

Function descriptions	initialize DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum.
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-153. Structure dma_parameter_struct.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA channel0 initialize */

dma_parameter_struct dma_init_struct;

dma_init_struct.direction = DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY;
dma_init_struct.memory_addr = (uint32_t)g_destbuf;
dma_init_struct.memory_inc = DMA_MEMORY_INCREASE_ENABLE;
dma_init_struct.memory_width = DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT;
dma_init_struct.number = TRANSFER_NUM;
dma_init_struct.periph_addr = (uint32_t)BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR;
dma_init_struct.periph_inc = DMA_PERIPH_INCREASE_ENABLE;
dma_init_struct.periph_width = DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT;
dma_init_struct.priority = DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH;
dma_init(DMA_CH0, dma_init_struct);
```

dma_circulation_enable

The description of `dma_circulation_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-157. Function `dma_circulation_enable`

Function name	dma_circulation_enable
Function prototype	void dma_circulation_enable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable DMA circulation mode

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel0 circulation mode */

dma_circulation_enable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_circulation_disable

The description of `dma_circulation_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-158. Function `dma_circulation_disable`

Function name	dma_circulation_disable
Function prototype	void dma_circulation_disable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable DMA circulation mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA channel0 circulation mode */

dma_circulation_disable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_memory_to_memory_enable

The description of `dma_memory_to_memory_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-159. Function `dma_memory_to_memory_enable`

Function name	dma_memory_to_memory_enable
----------------------	-----------------------------

Function prototype	void dma_memory_to_memory_enable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable memory to memory mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel0 memory to memory mode */

dma_memory_to_memory_enable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_memory_to_memory_disable

The description of `dma_memory_to_memory_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-160. Function `dma_memory_to_memory_disable`

Function name	dma_memory_to_memory_disable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_to_memory_disable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable memory to memory mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA channel0 memory to memory mode */

dma_memory_to_memory_disable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_channel_enable

The description of `dma_channel_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-161. Function dma_channel_enable

Function name	dma_channel_enable
Function prototype	void dma_channel_enable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel0 */

dma_channel_enable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_channel_disable

The description of dma_channel_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-162. Function dma_channel_disable

Function name	dma_channel_disable
Function prototype	void dma_channel_disable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA channel0 */

dma_channel_disable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_periph_address_config

The description of `dma_periph_address_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-163. Function `dma_periph_address_config`

Function name	dma_periph_address_config
Function prototype	void dma_periph_address_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t address);
Function descriptions	set DMA peripheral base address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
address	peripheral base address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 periph address */
#define BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR ((uint32_t)0x08004000)
dma_periph_address_config(DMA_CH0, BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR);
```

dma_memory_address_config

The description of `dma_memory_address_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-164. Function `dma_memory_address_config`

Function name	dma_memory_address_config
Function prototype	void dma_memory_address_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t address);
Function descriptions	set DMA memory base address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	

address	memory base address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 memory address */
uint8_t g_destbuf[TRANSFER_NUM];
dma_memory_address_config(DMA_CH0, (uint32_t) g_destbuf);
```

dma_transfer_number_config

The description of `dma_transfer_number_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-165. Function `dma_transfer_number_config`

Function name	<code>dma_transfer_number_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dma_transfer_number_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t number);</code>
Function descriptions	set the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>channelx</code>	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum <code>dma_channel_enum</code> .
<code>DMA_CHx(x=0..6)</code>	DMA channel selection
number	data transfer number(0x00000000-0x0000FFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 transfer number */
#define TRANSFER_NUM          0x400
dma_transfer_number_config(DMA_CH0, TRANSFER_NUM);
```

dma_transfer_number_get

The description of `dma_transfer_number_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-166. Function dma_transfer_number_get

Function name	dma_transfer_number_get
Function prototype	uint32_t dma_transfer_number_get(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	get the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	DMA data transmission remaining quantity (0x00000000-0x0000FFFF)

Example:

```
/* get DMA channel0 transfer number */

uint32_t number = 0;

number = dma_transfer_number_get(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_priority_config

The description of **dma_priority_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-167. Function dma_priority_config

Function name	dma_priority_config
Function prototype	void dma_priority_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t priority);
Function descriptions	configure priority level of DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
priority	priority Level of this channel
DMA_PRIORITY_LOW	low priority
DMA_PRIORITY_MEDIUM	medium priority
DMA_PRIORITY_HIGH	high priority
DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH	ultra high priority
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 priority */
dma_priority_config(DMA_CH0, DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH);
```

dma_memory_width_config

The description of `dma_memory_width_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-168. Function `dma_memory_width_config`

Function name	<code>dma_memory_width_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dma_memory_width_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t mwidth);</code>
Function descriptions	configure transfer data size of memory
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
mwidth	transfer data width of memory
DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT	transfer data width of memory is 8-bit
DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_16BIT	transfer data width of memory is 16-bit
DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_32BIT	transfer data width of memory is 32-bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 memory width */
dma_memory_width_config(DMA_CH0, DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT);
```

dma_periph_width_config

The description of `dma_periph_width_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-169. Function dma_periph_width_config

Function name	dma_periph_width_config
Function prototype	void dma_periph_width_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t pwidth);
Function descriptions	configure transfer data width of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
pwidth	transfer data width of peripheral
DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT	transfer data width of peripheral is 8-bit
DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_16BIT	transfer data width of peripheral is 16-bit
DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_32BIT	transfer data width of peripheral is 32-bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 periph width */
dma_periph_width_config(DMA_CH0, DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT);
```

dma_memory_increase_enable

The description of `dma_memory_increase_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-170. Function dma_memory_increase_enable

Function name	dma_memory_increase_enable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_increase_enable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable next address increasement algorithm of memory
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	

-	-	-
Return value		
-	-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel0 memory increase */

dma_memory_increase_enable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_memory_increase_disable

The description of `dma_memory_increase_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-171. Function `dma_memory_increase_disable`

Function name	dma_memory_increase_disable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_increase_disable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable next address increasement algorithm of memory
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA channel0 memory increase */

dma_memory_increase_disable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_periph_increase_enable

The description of `dma_periph_increase_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-172. Function `dma_periph_increase_enable`

Function name	dma_periph_increase_enable
Function prototype	void dma_periph_increase_enable(dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .

<i>DMA_CHx(x=0..6)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel0 periph increase */
dma_periph_increase_enable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_periph_increase_disable

The description of `dma_periph_increase_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-173. Function `dma_periph_increase_disable`

Function name	<code>dma_periph_increase_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dma_periph_increase_disable(dma_channel_enum channelx);</code>
Function descriptions	disable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum <code>dma_channel_enum</code>.
<i>DMA_CHx(x=0..6)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA channel0 periph increase */
dma_periph_increase_disable(DMA_CH0);
```

dma_transfer_direction_config

The description of `dma_transfer_direction_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-174. Function `dma_transfer_direction_config`

Function name	<code>dma_transfer_direction_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dma_transfer_direction_config(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t direction);</code>
Function descriptions	configure the direction of data transfer on the channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
direction	specify the direction of data transfer
DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY	read from peripheral and write to memory
DMA_MEMORY_TO_PERIPHERAL	read from memory and write to peripheral
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DMA channel0 transfer direction */
dma_transfer_direction_config(DMA_CH0, DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY);
```

dma_flag_get

The description of `dma_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-175. Function `dma_flag_get`

Function name	dma_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus dma_flag_get(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check DMA flag is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
DMA_FLAG_G	global interrupt flag of channel
DMA_FLAG_FTF	full transfer finish flag of channel
DMA_FLAG_HTF	half transfer finish flag of channel
DMA_FLAG_ERR	error flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get DMA channel0 flag */

FlagStatus flag = RESET;

flag = dma_flag_get(DMA_CH0, DMA_FLAG_FTF);
  
```

dma_flag_clear

The description of `dma_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-176. Function `dma_flag_clear`

Function name	dma_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dma_flag_clear(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear DMA a channel flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
DMA_FLAG_G	global interrupt flag of channel
DMA_FLAG_FTF	full transfer finish flag of channel
DMA_FLAG_HTF	half transfer finish flag of channel
DMA_FLAG_ERR	error flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* clear DMA channel0 flag */

dma_flag_clear(DMA_CH0, DMA_FLAG_FTF);
  
```

dma_interrupt_enable

The description of `dma_interrupt_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-177. Function `dma_interrupt_enable`

Function name	dma_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_enable(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	enable DMA interrupt
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
source	DMA interrupt source
DMA_INT_FTF	full transfer finish interrupt of channel
DMA_INT_HTF	half transfer finish interrupt of channel
DMA_INT_ERR	error interrupt of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel0 interrupt */
dma_interrupt_enable(DMA_CH0, DMA_INT_FTF);
```

dma_interrupt_disable

The description of `dma_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-178. Function `dma_interrupt_disable`

Function name	dma_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_disable(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	disable DMA interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
source	DMA interrupt source
DMA_INT_FTF	full transfer finish interrupt of channel
DMA_INT_HTF	half transfer finish interrupt of channel
DMA_INT_ERR	error interrupt of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA channel0 interrupt */

dma_interrupt_disable(DMA_CH0, DMA_INT_FTF);
```

dma_interrupt_flag_get

The description of `dma_interrupt_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-179. Function `dma_interrupt_flag_get`

Function name	dma_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus dma_interrupt_flag_get(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check DMA flag and interrupt enable bit is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF	full transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
DMA_INT_FLAG_HTF	half transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
DMA_INT_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get DMA interrupt_flag */

if(dma_interrupt_flag_get(DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF)){
    dma_interrupt_flag_clear(DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_G);
}
```

dma_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `dma_interrupt_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-180. Function `dma_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	dma_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_flag_clear(dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear DMA a channel flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
channelx	specify which DMA channel to set, refer to Table 3-152. Enum dma_channel_enum .
DMA_CHx(x=0..6)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
DMA_INT_FLAG_G	global interrupt flag of channel
DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF	full transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
DMA_INT_FLAG_HTF	half transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
DMA_INT_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get DMA interrupt_flag */
if(dma_interrupt_flag_get(DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF)){
    dma_interrupt_flag_clear(DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_G);
}
```

3.10. EXTI

EXTI is the interrupt/event controller in the MCU. It contains up to 24 independent edge detectors and generates interrupt requests or events to the processor. The EXTI registers are listed in chapter [3.10.1](#), the EXTI firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.10.2](#).

3.10.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

EXTI registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-181. EXTI Registers

Registers	Descriptions
EXTI_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
EXTI_EVENT	event enable register
EXTI_RTEN	rising edge trigger enable register
EXTI_FTEN	falling edge trigger enable register
EXTI_SWIEV	software interrupt event register
EXTI_PD	pending register

3.10.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

EXTI firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-182. EXTI firmware function

Function name	Function description
exti_deinit	deinitialize the EXTI
exti_init	initialize the EXTI line x
exti_interrupt_enable	enable the interrupts from EXTI line x
exti_interrupt_disable	disable the interrupts from EXTI line x
exti_event_enable	enable the events from EXTI line x
exti_event_disable	disable the events from EXTI line x
exti_software_interrupt_enable	enable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
exti_software_interrupt_disable	disable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
exti_flag_get	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
exti_flag_clear	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
exti_interrupt_flag_get	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
exti_interrupt_flag_clear	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag

exti_line_enum

Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum

Member name	Function description
EXTI_0	EXTI line 0
EXTI_1	EXTI line 1
EXTI_2	EXTI line 2
EXTI_3	EXTI line 3
EXTI_4	EXTI line 4
EXTI_5	EXTI line 5
EXTI_6	EXTI line 6
EXTI_7	EXTI line 7
EXTI_8	EXTI line 8
EXTI_9	EXTI line 9
EXTI_10	EXTI line 10
EXTI_11	EXTI line 11
EXTI_12	EXTI line 12
EXTI_13	EXTI line 13
EXTI_14	EXTI line 14
EXTI_15	EXTI line 15
EXTI_16	EXTI line 16
EXTI_17	EXTI line 17
EXTI_18	EXTI line 18
EXTI_19	EXTI line 19

Member name	Function description
EXTI_20	EXTI line 20
EXTI_21	EXTI line 21
EXTI_22	EXTI line 22
EXTI_23	EXTI line 23
EXTI_24	EXTI line 24
EXTI_25	EXTI line 25
EXTI_26	EXTI line 26
EXTI_27	EXTI line 27

exti_mode_enum

Table 3-184. Enum exti_mode_enum

Member name	Function description
EXTI_INTERRUPT	EXTI interrupt mode
EXTI_EVENT	EXTI event mode

exti_trig_type_enum

Table 3-185. Enum exti_trig_type_enum

Member name	Function description
EXTI_TRIG_RISING	EXTI rising edge trigger
EXTI_TRIG_FALLING	EXTI falling edge trigger
EXTI_TRIG_BOTH	EXTI rising and falling edge trigger
EXTI_TRIG_NONE	without rising edge or falling edge trigger

exti_deinit

The description of exti_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-186. Function exti_deinit

Function name	exti_deinit
Function prototype	void exti_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the EXTI
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the EXTI */
```

```
exti_deinit();
```

exti_init

The description of exti_init is shown as below:

Table 3-187. Function exti_init

Function name	exti_init
Function prototype	void exti_init(exti_line_enum linex, exti_mode_enum mode, exti_trig_type_enum trig_type);
Function descriptions	initialize the EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Input parameter{in}	
mode	EXTI mode, refer to Table 3-184. Enum exti_mode_enum
Input parameter{in}	
trig_type	trigger type, refer to Table 3-185. Enum exti_trig_type_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure EXTI_0 */
exti_init(EXTI_0, EXTI_INTERRUPT, EXTI_TRIG_BOTH);
```

exti_interrupt_enable

The description of exti_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-188. Function exti_interrupt_enable

Function name	exti_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void exti_interrupt_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	enable the interrupts from EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the interrupts from EXTI line 0 */

exti_interrupt_enable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_interrupt_disable

The description of exti_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-189. Function exti_interrupt_disable

Function name	exti_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void exti_interrupt_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	disable the interrupts from EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the interrupts from EXTI line 0 */

exti_interrupt_disable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_event_enable

The description of exti_event_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-190. Function exti_event_enable

Function name	exti_event_enable
Function prototype	void exti_event_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	enable the events from EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the events from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_event_enable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_event_disable

The description of exti_event_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-191. Function exti_event_disable

Function name	exti_event_disable
Function prototype	void exti_event_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	disable the events from EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the events from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_event_disable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_software_interrupt_enable

The description of exti_software_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-192. Function exti_software_interrupt_enable

Function name	exti_software_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void exti_software_interrupt_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	enable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable EXTI line 0 software interrupt */
```

```
exti_software_interrupt_enable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_software_interrupt_disable

The description of exti_software_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-193. Function exti_software_interrupt_disable

Function name	exti_software_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void exti_software_interrupt_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	disable the software interrupt event from EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable EXTI line 0 software interrupt */

exti_software_interrupt_disable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_flag_get

The description of exti_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-194. Function exti_flag_get

Function name	exti_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus exti_flag_get(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get EXTI line 0 flag status */

FlagStatus state = exti_flag_get(EXTI_0);
```

exti_flag_clear

The description of exti_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-195. Function exti_flag_clear

Function name	exti_flag_clear
Function prototype	void exti_flag_clear(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear EXTI line 0 flag status */

exti_flag_clear(EXTI_0);
```

exti_interrupt_flag_get

The description of exti_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-196. Function exti_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	exti_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus exti_interrupt_flag_get(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	get EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get EXTI line 0 interrupt flag status */

FlagStatus state = exti_interrupt_flag_get(EXTI_0);
```

exti_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of exti_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-197. Function exti_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	exti_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void exti_interrupt_flag_clear(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	clear EXTI line x interrupt pending flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x, refer to Table 3-183. Enum exti_line_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear EXTI line 0 interrupt flag status */

exti_interrupt_flag_clear(EXTI_0);
```

3.11. FMC

There is flash controller and option byte for GD32F3x0 series. The FMC registers are listed in chapter [3.11.1](#) the FMC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.11.2](#).

3.11.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

FMC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-198. FMC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
FMC_WS	FMC wait state register
FMC_KEY	FMC unlock key register
FMC_OBKEY	FMC option bytes unlock key register
FMC_STAT	FMC status register
FMC_CTL	FMC control register
FMC_ADDR	FMC address register
FMC_OBSTAT	FMC option bytes status register
FMC_WP	FMC write protection register
FMC_PID	FMC product ID register

3.11.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

FMC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-199. FMC firmware function

Function name	Function description
fmc_unlock	unlock the main FMC operation
fmc_lock	lock the main FMC operation
fmc_wscnt_set	set the wait state counter value
fmc_wait_state_enable	fmc wait state enable
fmc_wait_state_disable	fmc_wait_state_enable
fmc_page_erase	erase FMC page
fmc_mass_erase	erase FMC whole chip
fmc_halfword_program	FMC program half word at the corresponding address
fmc_word_program	FMC program a word at the corresponding address
fmc_word_reprogram	FMC program a word at the corresponding address without erasing
ob_unlock	unlock the option byte operation
ob_lock	lock the option byte operation
ob_reset	reload the option byte and generate a system reset
ob_erase	erase the option byte
ob_write_protection_enable	enable option byte write protection (OB_WP)
ob_security_protection_config	configure read out protect
ob_user_write	write the FMC option byte user
ob_data_program	write the FMC option byte data
ob_user_get	get the FMC option byte OB_USER
ob_data_get	get the FMC option byte OB_DATA
ob_write_protection_get	get the FMC option byte write protection
ob_obstat_plevel_get	get the value of FMC option byte security protection level (PLEVEL) in FMC_OBSTAT register
fmc_interrupt_enable	enable FMC interrupt
fmc_interrupt_disable	disable FMC interrupt
fmc_flag_get	get flag set or reset
fmc_flag_clear	clear the FMC pending flag
fmc_interrupt_flag_get	get interrupt flag set or reset
fmc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the FMC interrupt pending flag by writing 1
fmc_state_get	return the FMC state
fmc_ready_wait	check FMC ready or not
ob_parm_get	get current option byte value
ob_value_modify	modify the target option byte depending on the original value

Enum fmc_state_enum

Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Member name	Function description
FMC_READY	the operation has been completed
FMC_BUSY	the operation is in progress
FMC_PGERR	program error
FMC_WPERR	erase/program protection error
FMC_TOERR	timeout error
FMC_OB_HSPC	option byte security protection code high

Structure ob_parm_struct

Table 3-201. Structure ob_parm_struct

Member name	Function description
spc	option byte parameter spc
user	option byte parameter user
data0	option byte parameter data0
data1	option byte parameter data1
wp0	option byte parameter wp0
wp1	option byte parameter wp1

fmc_unlock

The description of fmc_unlock is shown as below:

Table 3-202. Function fmc_unlock

Function name	fmc_unlock
Function prototype	void fmc_unlock (void);
Function descriptions	unlock the main FMC operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the main FMC operation */
```

```
fmc_unlock ( );
```

fmc_lock

The description of fmc_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-203. Function fmc_lock

Function name	fmc_lock
Function prototype	void fmc_lock(void);
Function descriptions	lock the main FMC operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the main FMC operation */

fmc_lock( );
```

fmc_wscnt_set

The description of fmc_wscnt_set is shown as below:

Table 3-204. Function fmc_wscnt_set

Function name	fmc_wscnt_set
Function prototype	void fmc_wscnt_set(uint32_t wscnt);
Function descriptions	set the wait state counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
wscnt	wait state counter value
WS_WSCNT_0	FMC 0 wait
WS_WSCNT_1	FMC 1 wait
WS_WSCNT_2	FMC 2 wait
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the wait state counter value */

fmc_wscnt_set (WS_WSCNT_1);
```

fmc_wait_state_enable

The description of fmc_wait_state_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-205. Function fmc_wscnt_set

Function name	fmc_wait_state_enable
Function prototype	void fmc_wait_state_enable(void);
Function descriptions	fmc wait state enable
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* fmc wait state enable */
fmc_wait_state_enable ( );
```

fmc_wait_state_disable

The description of fmc_wait_state_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-206. Function fmc_wscnt_set

Function name	fmc_wait_state_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_wait_state_disable(void);
Function descriptions	fmc wait state disable
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* fmc wait state disable */
fmc_wait_state_disable ( );
```

fmc_page_erase

The description of fmc_page_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-207. Function fmc_page_erase

Function name	fmc_page_erase
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_page_erase(uint32_t page_address);
Function descriptions	erase page
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
page_address	the page address to be erased
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* erase page */
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_page_erase ( 0x08004000);
```

fmc_mass_erase

The description of fmc_mass_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-208. Function fmc_mass_erase

Function name	fmc_mass_erase
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_mass_erase(void);
Function descriptions	erase whole chip
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* erase whole chip */
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_mass_erase ( );
```

fmc_word_program

The description of fmc_word_program is shown as below:

Table 3-209. Function fmc_word_program

Function name	fmc_word_program
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_word_program(uint32_t address, uint32_t data);
Function descriptions	program a word at the corresponding address
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
data	the data to program
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* program a word at the corresponding address */
fmc_state_enum fmc_state = fmc_word_program ( 0x08004000,0xaabbccdd);
```

fmc_halfword_program

The description of fmc_halfword_program is shown as below:

Table 3-210. Function fmc_halfword_program

Function name	fmc_halfword_program
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_halfword_program(uint32_t address, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	program a half word at the corresponding address
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
data	the data to program
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* program half word at the corresponding address */
```

```
fmc_state_enum fmc_state = fmc_halfword_program ( 0x08004000,0xaadd);
```

fmc_word_reprogram

The description of fmc_word_reprogram is shown as below:

Table 3-211. Function fmc_word_reprogram

Function name	fmc_word_reprogram
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_word_reprogram(uint32_t address, uint32_t data);
Function descriptions	program a word at the corresponding address without erasing
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
data	the data to program
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* program a word at the corresponding address */
fmc_state_enum fmc_state ;
fmc_state = fmc_word_program ( 0x08004000, 0x01234567);
ffmc_state = fmc_word_reprogram ( 0x08004000, 0xd583179b);
```

ob_unlock

The description of ob_unlock is shown as below:

Table 3-212. Function ob_unlock

Function name	ob_unlock
Function prototype	void ob_unlock(void);
Function descriptions	unlock the option byte operation
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the option byte operation */

ob_unlock( );
```

ob_lock

The description of ob_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-213. Function ob_lock

Function name	ob_lock
Function prototype	void ob_lock(void);
Function descriptions	lock the option byte operation
Precondition	fmc_lock
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the option byte operation */

ob_lock( );
```

ob_reset

The description of ob_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-214. Function ob_reset

Function name	ob_reset
Function prototype	void ob_reset (void);
Function descriptions	reload the option byte and generate a system reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reload the option byte and generate a system reset */
```

```
ob_reset( );
```

ob_erase

The description of ob_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-215. Function ob_erase

Function name	ob_erase
Function prototype	void ob_erase(void);
Function descriptions	erase the option byte
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* erase the option byte */
fmc_state_enum fmc_state = ob_erase( );
```

ob_write_protection_enable

The description of ob_write_protection_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-216. Function ob_write_protection_enable

Function name	ob_write_protection_enable
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_write_protection_enable(uint16_t ob_wp);
Function descriptions	enable option byte write protection (OB_WP)
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_wp	write protection configuration data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```

/* enable write protection */

fmc_state_enum fmc_state = ob_write_protection_enable (0x7C);

```

ob_security_protection_config

The description of `ob_security_protection_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-217. Function `ob_security_protection_config`

Function name	ob_security_protection_config
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_security_protection_config (uint16_t ob_spc);
Function descriptions	configure security protection
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_spc	specify security protection
<i>FMC_NSPC</i>	no security protection
<i>FMC_LSPC</i>	low security protection
<i>FMC_HSPC</i>	high security protection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum <code>fmc_state_enum</code>

Example:

```

/* enable security protection */

fmc_state_enum fmc_state;

fmc_state = ob_security_protection_config (FMC_USPC);

```

ob_user_write

The description of `ob_user_write` is shown as below:

Table 3-218. Function `ob_user_write`

Function name	ob_user_write
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_user_write(uint8_t ob_user);
Function descriptions	program the FMC user option byte
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_user	user option byte
<i>OB_FWDGT_HW</i>	hardware free watchdog timer
<i>OB_DEEPSLEEP_RST</i>	no reset when entering deepsleep mode

<i>OB_STDBY_RST</i>	no reset when entering deepsleep mode
<i>OB_BOOT1_SET_1</i>	BOOT1 bit is 1
<i>OB_VDDA_DISABLE</i>	disable VDDA monitor
<i>OB_SRAM_PARITY_ENABLE</i>	enable SRAM parity check
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<i>fmc_state_enum</i>	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state enum

Example:

```
/* program the FMC user option byte */

fmc_state_enum fmc_state = ob_user_write(OB_FWDGT_HW);
```

ob_data_program

The description of *ob_data_program* is shown as below:

Table 3-219. Function *ob_data_program*

Function name	<i>ob_data_program</i>
Function prototype	<i>fmc_state_enum ob_data_program(uint32_t address, uint8_t data);</i>
Function descriptions	program the FMC data option byte
Precondition	<i>ob_unlock</i>
The called functions	<i>fmc_ready_wait</i>
Input parameter{in}	
address	OB_DATA_ADDR0 or OB_DATA_ADDR1
Input parameter{in}	
data	the byte to be programmed
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<i>fmc_state_enum</i>	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state enum

Example:

```
/* program option bytes data */

fmc_state_enum fmc_state = ob_data_program (OB_DATA_ADDR0, 0x56);
```

ob_user_get

The description of *ob_user_get* is shown as below:

Table 3-220. Function ob_user_get

Function name	ob_user_get
Function prototype	uint8_t ob_user_get(void);
Function descriptions	get OB_USER in register FMC_OBSTAT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	the FMC user option byte values(0x00 – 0xFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC user option byte */

uint8_t user = ob_user_get();
```

ob_data_get

The description of ob_data_get is shown as below:

Table 3-221. Function ob_data_get

Function name	ob_data_get
Function prototype	uint16_t ob_data_get(void);
Function descriptions	get OB_DATA in register FMC_OBSTAT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	the FMC data option byte values(0x0 – 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC data option byte */

uint16_t data = ob_data_get();
```

ob_write_protection_get

The description of ob_write_protection_get is shown as below:

Table 3-222. Function ob_write_protection_get

Function name	ob_write_protection_get
----------------------	-------------------------

Function prototype	uint16_t ob_write_protection_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC option byte write protection (OB_WP) in register FMC_WP
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	the FMC write protection option byte value(0x0 – 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC option byte write protection */
```

```
uint16_t wp = ob_write_protection_get ( );
```

ob_obstat_plevel_get

The description of **ob_obstat_plevel_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-223. Function ob_obstat_plevel_get

Function name	ob_obstat_plevel_get
Function prototype	uint32_t ob_obstat_plevel_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the value of FMC option byte security protection level (PLEVEL) in FMC_OBSTAT register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	the value of PLEVEL(0x0,0x01,0x03)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC option byte security protection level */
```

```
uint32_t obstat_plevel = ob_obstat_plevel_get ( );
```

fmc_interrupt_enable

The description of **fmc_interrupt_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-224. Function fmc_interrupt_enable

Function name	fmc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);

Function descriptions	enable FMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
<i>FMC_INT_END</i>	FMC end of program interrupt
<i>FMC_INT_ERR</i>	FMC error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable FMC interrupt */
fmc_interrupt_enable(FMC_INT_END);
```

fmc_interrupt_disable

The description of fmc_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-225. Function fmc_interrupt_disable

Function name	fmc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable FMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
<i>FMC_INT_END</i>	FMC end of program interrupt
<i>FMC_INT_ERR</i>	FMC error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable FMC interrupt */
fmc_interrupt_disable(FMC_INT_END);
```

fmc_flag_get

The description of fmc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-226. Function fmc_flag_get

Function name	fmc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fmc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check FMC flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	check FMC flag
FMC_FLAG_BUSY	FMC busy flag bit
FMC_FLAG_PGERR	FMC programming error flag
FMC_FLAG_WPERR	FMC write protection error flag
FMC_FLAG_END	FMC end of programming flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get FMC flag */
FlagStatus flag = fmc_flag_get(FMC_FLAG_END);
```

fmc_flag_clear

The description of fmc_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-227. Function fmc_flag_clear

Function name	fmc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void fmc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the FMC flag by writing 1
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	clear FMC flag
FMC_FLAG_PGERR	FMC operation error flag
FMC_FLAG_WPERR	FMC erase/program protection error flag
FMC_FLAG_END	FMC end of operation flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get FMC flag */
```

```
fmc_flag_clear(FMC_FLAG_END);
```

fmc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of fmc_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-228. Function fmc_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	fmc_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fmc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	get interrupt flag set or reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGERR</i>	FMC operation error flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_WPERR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get FMC interrupt flag */
FlagStatus flag = fmc_interrupt_flag_get (FMC_FLAG_PGERR);
```

fmc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of fmc_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-229. Function fmc_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	fmc_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear the FMC interrupt pending flag by writing 1
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	clear FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGERR</i>	FMC operation error flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_WPERR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* clear FMC interrupt flag */

fmc_interrupt_flag_clear (FMC_FLAG_PGERR);

fmc_state_get
```

The description of fmc_state_get is shown as below:

Table 3-230. Function fmc_state_get

Function name	fmc_state_get
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_state_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* get the FMC state */

fmc_state_enum state = fmc_state_get( );
```

fmc_ready_wait

The description of fmc_ready_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-231. Function fmc_ready_wait

Function name	fmc_ready_wait
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_ready_wait(uint32_t timeout);
Function descriptions	check whether FMC is ready or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	fmc_state_get()
Input parameter{in}	
timeout	timeout count
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, the enum members can refer to members of the enum Table 3-200. Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* check whether FMC is ready or not */

fmc_state_enum state = fmc_ready_wait (0x00001000);
```

ob_parm_get

The description of ob_parm_get is shown as below:

Table 3-232. Function ob_parm_get

Function name	ob_parm_get
Function prototype	void ob_parm_get(ob_parm_struct *ob_parm);
Function descriptions	get current option byte value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ob_parm	pointer to option byte parameter struct Table 3-201. Structure ob_parm_struct
Output parameter{out}	
ob_parm	pointer to option byte parameter struct Table 3-201. Structure ob_parm_struct
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get current option byte value */

ob_parm_struct ob_parm;

ob_parm_get(&ob_parm);
```

ob_value_modify

The description of ob_value_modify is shown as below:

Table 3-233. Function ob_value_modify

Function name	ob_value_modify
Function prototype	void ob_value_modify(uint32_t address, uint16_t value,ob_parm_struct *ob_parm);
Function descriptions	modify the target option byte depending on the original value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
address	target option byte address

Input parameter{in}	
value	target option byte value
Input parameter{in}	
ob_parm	pointer to option byte parameter struct Table 3-201. Structure ob_parm_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* check whether FMC is ready or not */

ob_parm_struct ob_parm;

ob_value_modify(OB_SPC_ADDR, (uint16_t)ob_spc ,&ob_parm);
```

3.12. FWDGT

The free watchdog timer (FWDGT) is a hardware timing circuitry that can be used to detect system failures due to software malfunctions. It's suitable for the situation that requires an independent environment and lower timing accuracy. The FWDGT registers are listed in chapter [3.12.1](#) the FWDGT firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.12.2](#).

3.12.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

FWDGT registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-234. FWDGT Registers

Registers	Descriptions
FWDGT_CTL	FWDGT control register
FWDGT_PSC	FWDGT prescaler register
FWDGT_RLD	FWDGT reload register
FWDGT_STAT	FWDGT status register
FWDGT_WND	FWDGT window register

3.12.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

FWDGT firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-235. FWDGT firmware function

Function name	Function description
fwdgt_write_enable	enable write access to FWDGT_PSC, FWDGT_RLD and FWDGT_WND

Function name	Function description
fwdgt_write_disable	disable write access to FWDGT_PSC, FWDGT_RLD and FWDGT_WND
fwdgt_enable	start the free watchdog timer counter
fwdgt_prescaler_value_config	configure the free watchdog timer counter prescaler value
fwdgt_reload_value_config	configure the free watchdog timer counter reload value
fwdgt_window_value_config	configure the free watchdog timer counter window value
fwdgt_counter_reload	reload the counter of FWDGT
fwdgt_config	configure counter reload value, and prescaler divider value
fwdgt_flag_get	get flag state of FWDGT

fwdgt_write_enable

The description of fwdgt_write_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-236. Function fwdgt_write_enable

Function name	fwdgt_write_enable
Function prototype	void fwdgt_write_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable write access to FWDGT_PSC, FWDGT_RLD and FWDGT_WND
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD */
fwdgt_write_enable();
```

fwdgt_write_disable

The description of fwdgt_write_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-237. Function fwdgt_write_disable

Function name	fwdgt_write_disable
Function prototype	void fwdgt_write_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable write access to FWDGT_PSC, FWDGT_RLD and FWDGT_WND
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD */

fwdgt_write_disable();
```

fwdgt_enable

The description of fwdgt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-238. Function fwdgt_enable

Function name	fwdgt_enable
Function prototype	void fwdgt_enable(void);
Function descriptions	start the FWDGT counter
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start the free watchdog timer counter */

fwdgt_enable();
```

wdgt_prescaler_value_config

The description of fwdgt_prescaler_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-239. Function fwdgt_prescaler_value_config

Function name	fwdgt_prescaler_value_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus fwdgt_prescaler_value_config(uint16_t prescaler_value);
Function descriptions	configure the free watchdog timer counter prescaler value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler_value	specify prescaler value
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV4</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 4
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV8</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 8
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV16</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 16
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV32</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 32
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV64</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 64
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV128</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 128

<code>FWDGT_PSC_DIV256</code>	FWDGT prescaler set to 256
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>ErrStatus</code>	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT prescaler to 256 */

ErrStatus flag;

flag = fwdgt_prescaler_value_config (FWDGT_PSC_DIV256);
```

fwdgt_reload_value_config

The description of `fwdgt_reload_value_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-240. Function `fwdgt_reload_value_config`

Function name	<code>fwdgt_reload_value_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>ErrStatus fwdgt_reload_value_config(uint16_t reload_value);</code>
Function descriptions	configure the free watchdog timer counter reload value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>reload_value</code>	reload_value: specify window value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>ErrStatus</code>	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT reload value to 0x0FFF */

ErrStatus flag;

flag = fwdgt_reload_value_config (0x0FFF);
```

fwdgt_window_value_config

The description of `fwdgt_window_value_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-241. Function `fwdgt_window_value_config`

Function name	<code>fwdgt_window_value_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>ErrStatus fwdgt_window_value_config(uint16_t window_value);</code>
Function descriptions	configure the FWDGT counter window value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>window_value</code>	window_value: specify window value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT window value to 0x0FFF */
```

```
ErrStatus flag;
```

```
flag = fwdgt_window_value_config (0x0FFF);
```

fwdgt_counter_reload

The description of fwdgt_counter_reload is shown as below:

Table 3-242. Function fwdgt_counter_reload

Function name	fwdgt_counter_reload
Function prototype	void fwdgt_counter_reload(void);
Function descriptions	reload the counter of FWDGT
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reload FWDGT counter */
```

```
fwdgt_counter_reload ( );
```

fwdgt_config

The description of fwdgt_config is shown as below:

Table 3-243. Function fwdgt_config

Function name	fwdgt_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus fwdgt_config(uint16_t reload_value, uint8_t prescaler_div);
Function descriptions	configure counter reload value, and prescaler divider value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
reload_value	specify reload value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler_div	FWDGT prescaler value-

<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV4</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 4
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV8</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 8
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV16</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 16
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV32</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 32
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV64</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 64
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV128</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 128
<i>FWDGT_PSC_DIV256</i>	FWDGT prescaler set to 256
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* config FWDGT counter clock: 40KHz(IRC40K) / 64 = 0.625 KHz */
fwdgt_config(2*500, FWDGT_PSC_DIV64);
```

fwdgt_flag_get

The description of fwdgt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-244. Function fwdgt_flag_get

Function name	fwdgt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fwdgt_flag_get(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	get flag state of FWDGT
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag to get
<i>FWDGT_FLAG_PUD</i>	a write operation to FWDGT_PSC register is on going
<i>FWDGT_FLAG_RUD</i>	a write operation to FWDGT_RLD register is on going
<i>FWDGT_FLAG_WUD</i>	a write operation to FWDGT_WND register is on going
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* test if a prescaler value update is on going */

FlagStatus status;
status = fwdgt_flag_get (FWDGT_FLAG_PUD);
```

3.13. GPIO/AFIO

GPIO is used to implement logic input/output functions for the devices. The GPIO registers are listed in chapter [3.13.1](#), the GPIO firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.13.2](#).

3.13.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

GPIO registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-245. GPIO Registers

Registers	Descriptions
GPIOx_CTL	GPIO port control register
GPIOx_OMODE	GPIO port output mode register
GPIOx_OSPEED0	GPIO port output speed register 0
GPIOx_PUD	GPIO port pull-up/pull-down register
GPIOx_ISTAT	GPIO port input status register
GPIOx_OCTL	GPIO port output control register
GPIOx_BOP	GPIO port bit operation register
GPIOx_LOCK	GPIO port configuration lock register
GPIO_AFSEL0	GPIO alternate function selected register 0
GPIO_AFSEL1	GPIO alternate function selected register 1
GPIO_BC	GPIO bit clear register
GPIO_TG	GPIO port bit toggle register
GPIO_OSPEED1	GPIO port output speed register 1

3.13.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

GPIO firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-246. GPIO firmware function

Function name	Function description
gpio_deinit	reset GPIO port
gpio_mode_set	set GPIO mode
gpio_output_options_set	set GPIO output type and speed
gpio_bit_set	set GPIO pin bit
gpio_bit_reset	reset GPIO pin bit
gpio_bit_write	write data to the specified GPIO pin
gpio_port_write	write data to the specified GPIO port
gpio_input_bit_get	get GPIO pin input status
gpio_input_port_get	get GPIO port input status
gpio_output_bit_get	get GPIO pin output status
gpio_output_port_get	get GPIO port output status
gpio_af_set	set GPIO alternate function

Function name	Function description
gpio_pin_lock	lock GPIO pin
gpio_bit_toggle	toggle GPIO pin status
gpio_port_toggle	toggle GPIO port status

gpio_deinit

The description of gpio_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-247. Function gpio_deinit

Function name	gpio_deinit
Function prototype	void gpio_deinit(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	reset GPIO port
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset GPIOA */
gpio_deinit(GPIOA);
```

gpio_mode_set

The description of gpio_mode_set is shown as below:

Table 3-248. Function gpio_mode_set

Function name	gpio_mode_set
Function prototype	void gpio_mode_set(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t pull_up_down, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	set GPIO mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
mode	gpio pin mode
GPIO_MODE_INPUT	input mode

<i>GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT</i>	output mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_AF</i>	alternate function mode
<i>GPIO_MODE_ANALOG</i> <i>G</i>	analog mode
Input parameter{in}	
<i>pull_up_down</i>	gpio pin with pull-up or pull-down resistor
<i>GPIO_PUPD_NONE</i>	floating mode, no pull-up and pull-down resistors
<i>GPIO_PUPD_PULLUP</i>	with pull-up resistor
<i>GPIO_PUPD_PULLDOWN</i> <i>WN</i>	with pull-down resistor
Input parameter{in}	
<i>pin</i>	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_X</i>	<i>GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)</i>
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config PA0 as input mode with pullup*/
gpio_mode_set(GPIOA, GPIO_MODE_INPUT, GPIO_PUPD_PULLUP, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_output_options_set

The description of `gpio_output_options_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-249. Function `gpio_output_options_set`

Function name	gpio_output_options_set
Function prototype	void gpio_output_options_set(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint8_t otype, uint32_t speed, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	set GPIO output type and speed
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>gpio_periph</i>	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>otype</i>	gpio pin output mode
<i>GPIO_OTYPE_PP</i>	push pull mode
<i>GPIO_OTYPE_OD</i>	open drain mode
Input parameter{in}	
<i>speed</i>	gpio pin output max speed

<code>GPIO_OSPEED_2MHZ</code>	output max speed 2MHz
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_10MHZ</code>	output max speed 10MHz
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_50MHZ</code>	output max speed 50MHz
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_MAX</code>	GPIO very high output speed, max speed more than 50MHz
Input parameter{in}	
<code>pin</code>	GPIO pin
<code>GPIO_PIN_x</code>	<code>GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)</code>
<code>GPIO_PIN_ALL</code>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config PA0 as push pull mode */
gpio_output_options_set(GPIOA, GPIO_OTYPE_PP, GPIO_OSPEED_2MHZ, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_set

The description of `gpio_bit_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-250. Function `gpio_bit_set`

Function name	<code>gpio_bit_set</code>
Function prototype	<code>void gpio_bit_set(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);</code>
Function descriptions	set GPIO pin bit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>gpio_periph</code>	GPIO port
<code>GPIOx</code>	<code>GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)</code>
Input parameter{in}	
<code>pin</code>	GPIO pin
<code>GPIO_PIN_x</code>	<code>GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)</code>
<code>GPIO_PIN_ALL</code>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set PA0*/
```

```
gpio_bit_set(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_reset

The description of gpio_bit_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-251. Function gpio_bit_reset

Function name	gpio_bit_reset
Function prototype	void gpio_bit_reset(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	reset GPIO pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset PA0*/
gpio_bit_set(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_write

The description of gpio_bit_write is shown as below:

Table 3-252. Function gpio_bit_write

Function name	gpio_bit_write
Function prototype	void gpio_bit_write(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin,bit_status bit_value);
Function descriptions	write data to the specified GPIO pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)

GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Input parameter{in}	
bit_value	SET or RESET
RESET	clear the port pin
SET	set the port pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write 1 to PA0 */
gpio_bit_write(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0, SET);
```

gpio_port_write

The description of **gpio_port_write** is shown as below:

Table 3-253. Function gpio_port_write

Function name	gpio_port_write
Function prototype	void gpio_port_write(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	write data to the specified GPIO port
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
data	specify the value to be written to the port output data register
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/*write 1010 0101 1010 0101 to Port A */
gpio_port_write(GPIOA, 0xA5A5);
```

gpio_input_bit_get

The description of **gpio_input_bit_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-254. Function gpio_input_bit_get

Function name	gpio_input_bit_get
----------------------	--------------------

Function prototype	FlagStatus gpio_input_bit_get(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	get GPIO pin input status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get status of PA0 */
FlagStatus bit_state = gpio_input_bit_get (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_input_port_get

The description of gpio_input_port_get is shown as below:

Table 3-255. Function gpio_input_port_get

Function name	gpio_input_port_get
Function prototype	uint16_t gpio_input_port_get(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	get GPIO all pins input status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0x0000-0xFFFF

Example:

```
/* get input value of Port A */
uint16_t port_state;
port_state = gpio_input_bit_get (GPIOA);
```

gpio_output_bit_get

The description of gpio_output_bit_get is shown as below:

Table 3-256. Function gpio_output_bit_get

Function name	gpio_output_bit_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus gpio_output_bit_get(uint32_t gpio_periph,uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	get GPIO pin output status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get output status of PA0 */
FlagStatus bit_state;
bit_state = gpio_output_bit_get (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_output_port_get

The description of gpio_output_port_get is shown as below:

Table 3-257. Function gpio_output_port_get

Function name	gpio_output_port_get
Function prototype	uint16_t gpio_output_port_get(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	get GPIO all pins output status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Uint16_t	0x0000-0xFFFF
-----------------	---------------

Example:

```
/* get output value of Port A */

uint16_t port_state;

port_state = gpio_output_port_get (GPIOA);
```

gpio_af_set

The description of gpio_af_set is shown as below:

Table 3-258. Function gpio_af_set

Function name	gpio_af_set
Function prototype	void gpio_af_set(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t alt_func_num, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	set GPIO alternate function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C)
Input parameter{in}	
alt_func_num	GPIO pin af function, please refer to specific device datasheet
GPIO_AF_0	TIMER2, TIMER13, TIMER14, TIMER16, SPI0, SPI1, I2S0, CK_OUT, USART0, CEC, IFRP, TSI, CTC, I2C0, I2C1, SWDIO, SWCLK
GPIO_AF_1	USART0, USART1, TIMER2, TIMER14, I2C0, I2C1, IFRP, CEC
GPIO_AF_2	TIMER0, TIMER1, TIMER15, TIMER16, I2S0
GPIO_AF_3	TSI, I2C0, TIMER14
GPIO_AF_4 (port A,B only)	USART1, I2C0, I2C1, TIMER13
GPIO_AF_5 (port A,B only)	TIMER15, TIMER16, USBFS, I2S0
GPIO_AF_6 (port A,B only)	CTC, SPI1
GPIO_AF_7 (port A,B only)	CMP0, CMP1
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/*set PA0 alternate function 0*/
gpio_af_set(GPIOA, GPIO_AF_0, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_pin_lock

The description of gpio_pin_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-259. Function gpio_pin_lock

Function name	gpio_pin_lock
Function prototype	void gpio_pin_lock(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	lock GPIO pin bit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock PA0*/
gpio_pin_lock (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_toggle

The description of gpio_bit_toggle is shown as below:

Table 3-260. Function gpio_bit_toggle

Function name	gpio_bit_toggle
Function prototype	void gpio_bit_toggle(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	toggle GPIO pin status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)

Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	GPIO_PIN_ALL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* toggle PA0 */
gpio_bit_toggle (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_port_toggle

The description of gpio_port_toggle is shown as below:

Table 3-261. Function gpio_port_toggle

Function name	gpio_port_toggle
Function prototype	void gpio_port_toggle(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	toggle GPIO port status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx(x = A,B,C,D,F)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* toggle GPIOA*/
gpio_port_toggle (GPIOA);
```

3.14. I2C

The I2C (inter-integrated circuit) module provides an I2C interface which is an industry standard two-line serial interface for MCU to communicate with external I2C interface. The I2C registers are listed in chapter [3.14.1](#), the I2C firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.14.2](#)

3.14.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

I2C registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-262. I2C Registers

Registers	Descriptions
I2C_CTL0	Control register 0
I2C_CTL1	Control register 1
I2C_SADDR0	Slave address register 0
I2C_SADDR1	Slave address register 1
I2C_DATA	Transfer buffer register
I2C_STAT0	Transfer status register 0
I2C_STAT1	Transfer status register 1
I2C_CKCFG	Clock configure register
I2C_RT	Rise time register
I2C_FMPCFG	Fast mode plus configure register

3.14.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

I2C firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-263. I2C firmware function

Function name	Function description
i2c_deinit	reset I2C
i2c_clock_config	configure I2C clock
i2c_mode_addr_config	configure I2C address
i2c_smbus_type_config	select SMBus type
i2c_ack_config	whether or not to send an ACK
i2c_ackpos_config	configure I2C POAP position
i2c_master_addressing	master sends slave address
i2c_dualaddr_enable	enable dual-address mode
i2c_dualaddr_disable	disable dual-address mode
i2c_enable	enable I2C
i2c_disable	disable I2C
i2c_start_on_bus	generate a START condition on I2C bus
i2c_stop_on_bus	generate a STOP condition on I2C bus
i2c_data_transmit	I2C transmit data function
i2c_data_receive	I2C receive data function
i2c_dma_config	configure I2C DMA mode
i2c_dma_last_transfer_config	configure whether next DMA EOT is DMA last transfer or not
i2c_stretch_scl_low_config	whether to stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode
i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config	whether or not to response to a general call

Function name	Function description
i2c_software_reset_config	software reset I2C
i2c_pec_config	configure I2C PEC calculation
i2c_pec_transfer_config	configure whether to transfer PEC value
i2c_pec_value_get	packet error checking value
i2c_smbus_alert_config	configure I2C alert through SMBA pin
i2c_smbus_arp_config	configure I2C ARP protocol in SMBus
i2c_flag_get	get I2C flag status
i2c_flag_clear	clear I2C status
i2c_interrupt_enable	enable I2C interrupt
i2c_interrupt_disable	disable I2C interrupt
i2c_interrupt_flag_get	get I2C interrupt status
i2c_interrupt_flag_clear	clear I2C interrupt status

Enum i2c_flag_enum

Table 3-264. Enum i2c_flag_enum

Member name	Function description
I2C_FLAG_SBSEND	start condition sent out in master mode
I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_BTC	byte transmission finishes
I2C_FLAG_ADD10SEND	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode
I2C_FLAG_STPDET	stop condition detected in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_RBNE	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving
I2C_FLAG_TBE	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting
I2C_FLAG_BERR	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus
I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB	arbitration lost in master mode
I2C_FLAG_AERR	acknowledge error
I2C_FLAG_OUERR	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_PECERR	PEC error when receiving data
I2C_FLAG_SMBTO	timeout signal in SMBus mode
I2C_FLAG_SMBALT	SMBus alert status
I2C_FLAG_MASTER	a flag indicating whether I2C block is in master or slave mode
I2C_FLAG_I2CBSY	busy flag
I2C_FLAG_TR	whether the I2C is a transmitter or a receiver
I2C_FLAG_RXGC	general call address (00h) received
I2C_FLAG_DEFSMB	default address of SMBus device
I2C_FLAG_HSTSMB	SMBus host header detected in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_DUMOD	dual flag in slave mode indicating which address is matched in dual-address mode

Enum i2c_interrupt_flag_enum

Table 3-265. Enum i2c_interrupt_flag_enum

Member name	Function description
I2C_INT_FLAG_SBSEND	start condition sent out in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDSEND	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_BTC	byte transmission finishes interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_ADD10SEND	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_STPDET	stop condition detected in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_RBNE	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_TBE	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTARB	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR	acknowledge error interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_OUERR	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_PECERR	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBTO	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBALT	SMBus Alert status interrupt flag

Enum i2c_interrupt_enum

Table 3-266. Enum i2c_interrupt_enum

Member name	Function description
I2C_INT_ERR	error interrupt enable
I2C_INT_EV	event interrupt enable
I2C_INT_BUF	buffer interrupt enable

i2c_deinit

The description of i2c_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-267. Function i2c_deinit

Function name	i2c_deinit
Function prototype	void i2c_deinit(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	reset I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset I2C0 */
i2c_deinit(I2C0);
```

i2c_clock_config

The description of i2c_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-268. Function i2c_clock_config

Function name	i2c_clock_config
Function prototype	void i2c_clock_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t clkspeed, uint32_t dutycyc);
Function descriptions	configure I2C clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_clock_freq_get
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
clkspeed	i2c clock speed
Input parameter{in}	
dutycyc	duty cycle in fast mode
I2C_DTCY_2	T_low/T_high=2
I2C_DTCY_16_9	T_low/T_high=16/9
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2C0 clock speed as 100KHz */
i2c_clock_config(I2C0, 100000, I2C_DTCY_2);
```

i2c_mode_addr_config

The description of i2c_mode_addr_config is shown as below:

Table 3-269. Function i2c_mode_addr_config

Function name	i2c_mode_addr_config
Function prototype	void i2c_mode_addr_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t addformat, uint32_t addr);

Function descriptions	configure I2C address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
mode	I2C mode select
<i>I2C_I2CMODE_ENABLE</i>	I2C mode
<i>I2C_SMBUSMODE_ENABLE</i>	SMBus mode
Input parameter{in}	
addformat	7bits or 10bits
<i>I2C_ADDFORMAT_7BITS</i>	address format is 7 bits
<i>I2C_ADDFORMAT_10BITS</i>	address format is 10 bits
Input parameter{in}	
addr	I2C address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2C0 address as 0x82, using 7 bits */

i2c_mode_addr_config(I2C0, I2C_I2CMODE_ENABLE, I2C_ADDFORMAT_7BITS, 0x82);
```

i2c_smbus_type_config

The description of i2c_smbus_type_config is shown as below:

Table 3-270. Function i2c_smbus_type_config

Function name	i2c_smbus_type_config
Function prototype	void i2c_smbus_type_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t type);
Function descriptions	select SMBus type
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	

type	Device or host
<i>I2C_SMBUS_DEVICE</i>	SMBus mode device type
<i>I2C_SMBUS_HOST</i>	SMBus mode host type
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config I2C0 as SMBUS host type*/
i2c_smbus_type_config (I2C0, I2C_SMBUS_HOST);
```

i2c_ack_config

The description of i2c_ack_config is shown as below:

Table 3-271. Function i2c_ack_config

Function name	i2c_ack_config
Function prototype	void i2c_ack_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t ack);
Function descriptions	whether or not to send an ACK
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>ack</i>	whether or not to send an ACK
<i>I2C_ACK_ENABLE</i>	ACK will be sent
<i>I2C_ACK_DISABLE</i>	ACK will not be sent
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 will send ACK */
i2c_ack_config (I2C0, I2C_ACK_ENABLE);
```

i2c_ackpos_config

The description of i2c_ackpos_config is shown as below:

Table 3-272. Function i2c_ackpos_config

Function name	i2c_ackpos_config
----------------------	-------------------

Function prototype	void i2c_ackpos_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pos);
Function descriptions	configure I2C POAP position
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
pos	ACK position
<i>I2C_ACKPOS_CURRENT</i>	ACKEN bit decides whether or not to send ACK or not for the current byte
<i>I2C_ACKPOS_NEXT</i>	ACKEN bit decides whether or not to send ACK for the next byte
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* The ACK of I2C0 is send for the current frame */

i2c_ackpos_config (I2C0, I2C_ACKPOS_CURRENT);
```

i2c_master_addressing

The description of i2c_master_addressing is shown as below:

Table 3-273. Function i2c_master_addressing

Function name	i2c_master_addressing
Function prototype	void i2c_master_addressing(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t addr, uint32_t trandirection);
Function descriptions	master sends slave address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
addr	slave address
Input parameter{in}	
trandirection	transmitter or receiver
<i>I2C_TRANSMITTER</i>	transmitter
<i>I2C_RECEIVER</i>	receiver
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* send slave address to I2C bus and I2C0 act as receiver */
```

```
i2c_master_addressing(I2C0, 0x82, I2C_RECEIVER);
```

i2c_dualaddr_enable

The description of i2c_dualaddr_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-274. Function i2c_dualaddr_enable

Function name	i2c_dualaddr_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_dualaddr_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t addr);
Function descriptions	enable dual-address mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
addr	second address in dual-address mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 dual-address*/
```

```
i2c_dualaddr_enable (I2C0, 0x80);
```

i2c_dualaddr_disable

The description of i2c_dualaddr_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-275. Function i2c_dualaddr_disable

Function name	i2c_dualaddr_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_dualaddr_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	disable dual-address mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 dual-address */

i2c_dualaddr_disable (I2C0);
```

i2c_enable

The description of i2c_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-276. Function i2c_enable

Function name	i2c_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	enable I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 */

i2c_enable (I2C0);
```

i2c_disable

The description of i2c_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-277. Function i2c_disable

Function name	i2c_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	disable I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 */

i2c_disable (I2C0);
```

i2c_start_on_bus

The description of i2c_start_on_bus is shown as below:

Table 3-278. Function i2c_start_on_bus

Function name	i2c_start_on_bus
Function prototype	void i2c_start_on_bus(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	generate a START condition on I2C bus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 send a start condition to I2C bus */

i2c_start_on_bus (I2C0);
```

i2c_stop_on_bus

The description of i2c_stop_on_bus is shown as below:

Table 3-279. Function i2c_stop_on_bus

Function name	i2c_stop_on_bus
Function prototype	void i2c_stop_on_bus(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	generate a STOP condition on I2C bus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 generate a STOP condition to I2C bus */

i2c_stop_on_bus (I2C0);
```

i2c_data_transmit

The description of i2c_data_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-280. Function i2c_data_transmit

Function name	i2c_data_transmit
Function prototype	void i2c_data_transmit(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint8_t data);
Function descriptions	I2C transmit data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
data	transmit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 transmit data */

i2c_data_transmit (I2C0, 0x80);
```

i2c_data_receive

The description of i2c_data_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-281. Function i2c_data_receive

Function name	i2c_data_receive
Function prototype	uint8_t i2c_data_receive(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	I2C receive data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00..0xFF

Example:

```
/* I2C0 receive data */

uint8_t i2c_receiver;

i2c_receiver = i2c_data_receive(I2C0);
```

i2c_dma_config

The description of **i2c_dma_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-282. Function i2c_dma_config

Function name	i2c_dma_config
Function prototype	void i2c_dma_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dmastate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C DMA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
dmastate	on or off
<i>I2C_DMA_ON</i>	enable DMA mode
<i>I2C_DMA_OFF</i>	disable DMA mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 DMA mode config */

i2c_dma_config (I2C0, I2C_DMA_ON);
```

i2c_dma_last_transfer_config

The description of **i2c_dma_last_transfer_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-283. Function i2c_dma_last_transfer_config

Function name	i2c_dma_last_transfer_config
Function prototype	void i2c_dma_last_transfer_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dmalast);
Function descriptions	configure whether next DMA EOT is DMA last transfer or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
dmalast	next DMA EOT is the last transfer or not
I2C_DMALST_ON	next DMA EOT is the last transfer
I2C_DMALST_OFF	next DMA EOT is not the last transfer
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* next DMA EOT is the last transfer */

i2c_dma_last_transfer_config (I2C0, I2C_DMALST_ON);
```

i2c_stretch_scl_low_config

The description of i2c_stretch_scl_low_config is shown as below:

Table 3-284. Function i2c_stretch_scl_low_config

Function name	i2c_stretch_scl_low_config
Function prototype	void i2c_stretch_scl_low_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t stretchpara);
Function descriptions	whether to stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
stretchpara	SCL stretching enable or disable
I2C_SCLSTRETCH_ENABLE	enable SCL stretching
I2C_SCLSTRETCH_DISABLE	disable SCL stretching
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode */

i2c_stretch_scl_low_config (I2C0, I2C_SCLSTRETCH_ENABLE);
```

i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config

The description of i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config is shown as below:

Table 3-285. Function i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config

Function name	i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config
Function prototype	void i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t gcallpara);
Function descriptions	whether or not to response to a general call
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
gcallpara	response to a general call or not
I2C_GCEN_ENABLE	slave will response to a general call
I2C_GCEN_DISABLE	slave will not response to a general call
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 will response to a general call */

i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config (I2C0, I2C_GCEN_ENABLE);
```

i2c_software_reset_config

The description of i2c_software_reset_config is shown as below:

Table 3-286. Function i2c_software_reset_config

Function name	i2c_software_reset_config
Function prototype	void i2c_software_reset_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t sreset);
Function descriptions	configure software reset of I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>sreset</i>	reset or not
<i>I2C_SRESET_SET</i>	I2C is under reset
<i>I2C_SRESET_RESET</i>	I2C is not under reset
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* software reset I2C0 */
i2c_software_reset_config (I2C0, I2C_SRESET_SET);
```

i2c_pec_config

The description of i2c_pec_config is shown as below:

Table 3-287. Function i2c_pec_config

Function name	i2c_pec_config
Function prototype	void i2c_pec_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pecstate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C PEC calculation or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>pecstate</i>	on or off
<i>I2C_PEC_ENABLE</i>	PEC calculation on
<i>I2C_PEC_DISABLE</i>	PEC calculation off
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* Config I2C PEC calculation */
i2c_pec_config (I2C0, I2C_PEC_ENABLE);
```

i2c_pec_transfer_config

The description of i2c_pec_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-288. Function i2c_pec_transfer_config

Function name	i2c_pec_transfer_config
Function prototype	void i2c_pec_transfer_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pecpara);
Function descriptions	configure whether to transfer PEC value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
pecpara	Transfer PEC or not
I2C_PECTRANS_ENA BLE	transfer PEC
I2C_PECTRANS_DISA BLE	not transfer PEC
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 transfer PEC */

i2c_pec_transfer_config (I2C0, I2C_PECTRANS_ENABLE);
```

i2c_pec_value_get

The description of i2c_pec_value_get is shown as below:

Table 3-289. Function i2c_pec_value_get

Function name	i2c_pec_value_get
Function prototype	uint8_t i2c_pec_value_get(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	get packet error checking value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

uint8_t	PEC value
----------------	-----------

Example:

```
/* I2C0 get packet error checking value */

uint8_t pec_value;

pec_value = i2c_pec_value_get (I2C0);
```

i2c_smbus_alert_config

The description of i2c_smbus_alert_config is shown as below:

Table 3-290. Function i2c_smbus_alert_config

Function name	i2c_smbus_alert_config
Function prototype	void i2c_smbus_alert_config (uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t smbuspara);
Function descriptions	configure I2C alert through SMBA pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
smbuspara	issue alert through SMBA pin or not
I2C_SALTSEND_ENAB LE	issue alert through SMBA pin
I2C_SALTSEND_DISA BLE	not issue alert through SMBA pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 issue alert through SMBA pin enable*/

i2c_smbus_alert_config (I2C0, I2C_SALTSEND_ENABLE);
```

i2c_smbus_arp_config

The description of i2c_smbus_arp_config is shown as below:

Table 3-291. Function i2c_smbus_arp_config

Function name	i2c_smbus_arp_config
Function prototype	void i2c_smbus_arp_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t arpstate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C ARP protocol in SMBus

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>arpstate</i>	ARP protocol in SMBus switch
<i>I2C_ARP_ENABLE</i>	enable ARP
<i>I2C_ARP_DISABLE</i>	disable ARP
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config I2C0 ARP protocol in SMBus switch */
i2c_smbus_arp_config (I2C0, I2C_ARP_ENABLE);
```

i2c_flag_get

The description of i2c_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-292. Function i2c_flag_get

Function name	i2c_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus i2c_flag_get(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_flag_enum flag)
Function descriptions	check I2C flag is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>flag</i>	specify get which flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_SBSEND</i>	start condition send out
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_BTC</i>	byte transmission finishes
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADD10SEN</i>	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode
<i>D</i>	
<i>I2C_FLAG_STPDET</i>	stop condition detected in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_RBNE</i>	I2C_DATA is not empty during receiving
<i>I2C_FLAG_TBE</i>	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting
<i>I2C_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus

<i>I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error
<i>I2C_FLAG_OUERR</i>	overrun or underrun situation occurs in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBALT</i>	SMBus alert status
<i>I2C_FLAG_MASTER</i>	a flag indicating whether I2C block is in master or slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_I2CBSY</i>	busy flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_TR</i>	whether the I2C is a transmitter or a receiver
<i>I2C_FLAG_RXGC</i>	general call address (00h) received
<i>I2C_FLAG_DEFSMB</i>	default address of SMBus device
<i>I2C_FLAG_HSTSMB</i>	SMBus host header detected in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_DUMOD</i>	dual flag in slave mode indicating which address is matched in dual-address mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* check whether start condition send out */

FlagStatus flag_state = RESET;

flag_state = i2c_flag_get (I2C0, I2C_FLAG_SBSEND);
```

i2c_flag_clear

The description of i2c_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-293. Function i2c_flag_clear

Function name	i2c_flag_clear
Function prototype	void i2c_flag_clear(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_flag_enum flag)
Function descriptions	clear I2C flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag type
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBALT</i>	SMBus Alert status
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data
<i>I2C_FLAG_OUERR</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode

<i>I2C_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error
<i>I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear a bus error flag*/
i2c_flag_clear (I2C0, I2C_FLAG_BERR);
```

i2c_interrupt_enable

The description of i2c_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-294. Function i2c_interrupt_enable

Function name	i2c_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_interrupt_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable I2C interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>interrupt</i>	interrupt type
<i>I2C_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt enable
<i>I2C_INT_EV</i>	event interrupt enable
<i>I2C_INT_BUF</i>	buffer interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 event interrupt */
i2c_interrupt_enable (I2C0, I2C_INT_EV);
```

i2c_interrupt_disable

The description of i2c_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-295. Function i2c_interrupt_disable

Function name	i2c_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_interrupt_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable I2C interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	interrupt type
I2C_INT_ERR	error interrupt disable
I2C_INT_EV	event interrupt disable
I2C_INT_BUF	buffer interrupt disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 event interrupt */
i2c_interrupt_disable (I2C0, I2C_INT_EV);
```

i2c_interrupt_flag_get

The description of i2c_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-296. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	i2c_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus i2c_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	get I2C interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	interrupt flag

<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SBSEND</i>	start condition sent out in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDSENDEND</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BTCS</i>	byte transmission finishes
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADD10SEND</i>	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_STPDET</i>	stop condition detected in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RBNE</i>	I2C_DATA is not Empty during receiving interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TBE</i>	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_OUER</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBA</i>	SMBus Alert status interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* check the byte transmission finishes interrupt flag is set or not*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_state = RESET;  
  
flag_state = i2c_interrupt_flag_get (I2C0, I2C_INT_FLAG_BTCS);
```

i2c_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of i2c_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-297. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	i2c_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void i2c_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t i2c_periph, i2c_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear I2C interrupt status

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>i2c_periph</i>	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<i>int_flag</i>	interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDS</i> <i>END</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTA</i> <i>RB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_OUER</i> <i>R</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_PECE</i> <i>RR</i>	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBT</i> <i>O</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBA</i> <i>LT</i>	SMBus Alert status interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the acknowledge error interrupt flag */

i2c_interrupt_flag_clear (I2C0, I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR);
```

3.15. MISC

MISC is a software package that provide the interfaces for NVIC and SysTick. The NVIC and SysTick registers are listed in chapter [3.15.1](#), the MISC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.15.2](#).

3.15.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

Table 3-298. NVIC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
ISER ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Set Enable Register

Registers	Descriptions
ICER ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Clear Enable Register
ISPR ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Set Pending Register
ICPR ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Clear Pending Register
IABR ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Active bit Register
IP ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Priority Register
STIR ⁽¹⁾	Software Trigger Interrupt Register
CPUID ⁽²⁾	CPUID Base Register
ICSR ⁽²⁾	Interrupt Control and State Register
VTOR ⁽²⁾	Vector Table Offset Register
AIRCR ⁽²⁾	Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register
SCR ⁽²⁾	System Control Register
CCR ⁽²⁾	Configuration Control Register
SHP ⁽²⁾	System Handlers Priority Registers
SHCSR ⁽²⁾	System Handler Control and State Register
CFSR ⁽²⁾	Configurable Fault Status Register
HFSR ⁽²⁾	HardFault Status Register
DFSR ⁽²⁾	Debug Fault Status Register
MMFAR ⁽²⁾	MemManage Fault Address Register
BFAR ⁽²⁾	BusFault Address Register
AFSR ⁽²⁾	Auxiliary Fault Status Register
PFR ⁽²⁾	Processor Feature Register
DFR ⁽²⁾	Debug Feature Register
ADR ⁽²⁾	Auxiliary Feature Register
MMFR ⁽²⁾	Memory Model Feature Register
ISAR ⁽²⁾	Instruction Set Attributes Register
CPACR ⁽²⁾	Coprocessor Access Control Register

1. refer to the structure NVIC_Type, is defined in the core_cm4.h file

2. refer to the structure SCB_Type, is defined in the core_cm4.h file

Table 3-299. SysTick Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CTRL ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Control and Status Register
LOAD ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Reload Value Register
VAL ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Current Value Register
CALIB ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Calibration Register

1. refer to the structure SysTick_Type, is defined in the core_cm4.h file

3.15.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

MISC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-300. MISC firmware function

Function name	Function description
nvic_priority_group_set	set the priority group
nvic_irq_enable	enable NVIC interrupt request
nvic_irq_disable	disable NVIC interrupt request
nvic_vector_table_set	set the NVIC vector table address
system_lowpower_set	set the state of the low power mode
system_lowpower_reset	reset the state of the low power mode
systick_clksource_set	set the systick clock source

Enum IRQn_Type

Table 3-301. Enum IRQn_Type

Member name	Function description
WWDGT_IRQn	window watchDog timer interrupt
LVD_IRQn	LVD through EXTI line detect interrupt
RTC_IRQn	RTC through EXTI line interrupt
FMC_IRQn	FMC interrupt
RCU_CTC_IRQn	RCU and CTC interrupt
EXTI0_1_IRQn	EXTI line 0 and 1 interrupts
EXTI2_3_IRQn	EXTI line 2 and 3 interrupts
EXTI4_15_IRQn	EXTI line 4 to 15 interrupts
TSI_IRQn	TSI Interrupt
DMA_Channel0_IRQn	DMA channel 0 interrupt
DMA_Channel1_2_IRQn	DMA channel 1 and channel 2 interrupts
DMA_Channel3_4_IRQn	DMA channel 3 and channel 4 interrupts
ADC_CMP_IRQn	ADC, CMP0 and CMP1 interrupts
TIMER0_BRK_UP_TRG_COM_IRQn	TIMER0 break, update, trigger and commutation interrupts
TIMER0_Channel_IRQn	TIMER0 channel capture compare interrupts
TIMER1_IRQn	TIMER1 interrupt
TIMER2_IRQn	TIMER2 interrupt
TIMER5_DAC_IRQn	TIMER5 and DAC interrupts
TIMER13_IRQn	TIMER13 interrupt
TIMER14_IRQn	TIMER14 interrupt
TIMER15_IRQn	TIMER15 interrupt
TIMER16_IRQn	TIMER16 interrupt
I2C0_EV_IRQn	I2C0 event interrupt
I2C1_EV_IRQn	I2C1 event interrupt
SPI0_IRQn	SPI0 interrupt
SPI1_IRQn	SPI1 interrupt
USART0_IRQn	USART0 interrupt
USART1_IRQn	USART1 interrupt
CEC_IRQn	CEC interrupt

Member name	Function description
I2C0_ER IRQn	I2C0 error interrupt
I2C1_ER IRQn	I2C1 error interrupt
DMA_Channel5_6_IRQn	DMA channel 5 and channel 6 interrupts
USBFS_WKUP_IRQn	USBFS wakeup interrupt
USBFS_IRQn	USBFS global interrupt

nvic_priority_group_set

The description of nvic_priority_group_set is shown as below:

Table 3-302. Function nvic_priority_group_set

Function name	nvic_priority_group_set
Function prototype	void nvic_priority_group_set(uint32_t nvic_prigroup);
Function descriptions	configure bits length of the priority group
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_prigroup	priority group
NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR_E0_SUB4	0 bits for pre-emption priority 4 bits for subpriority
NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR_E1_SUB3	1 bits for pre-emption priority 3 bits for subpriority
NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR_E2_SUB2	2 bits for pre-emption priority 2 bits for subpriority
NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR_E3_SUB1	3 bits for pre-emption priority 1 bits for subpriority
NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR_E4_SUB0	4 bits for pre-emption priority 0 bits for subpriority
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* priority group configuration , 0 bits for pre-emption priority 4 bits for subpriority */
nvic_priority_group_set(NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE0_SUB4);
```

nvic_irq_enable

The description of nvic_irq_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-303. Function nvic_irq_enable

Function name	nvic_irq_enable
----------------------	-----------------

Function prototype	void nvic_irq_enable(uint8_t nvic_irq, uint8_t nvic_irq_pre_priority);
Function descriptions	enable NVIC request, configure the priority of interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	NVIC_SetPriority、NVIC_EnableIRQ
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq	NVIC interrupt, refer to enum Enum IRQn_Type
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq_pre_priority	the pre-emption priority needed to set (0~3)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable window watchDog timer interrupt , priority is 1 */
nvic_irq_enable(WWDGT_IRQn, 1);
```

nvic_irq_disable

The description of nvic_irq_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-304. Function nvic_irq_disable

Function name	nvic_irq_disable
Function prototype	void nvic_irq_disable(uint8_t nvic_irq);
Function descriptions	disable NVIC request
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq	NVIC interrupt, refer to enum Enum IRQn_Type
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable window watchDog timer interrupt */
nvic_irq_disable(WWDGT_IRQn);
```

nvic_vector_table_set

The description of nvic_vector_table_set is shown as below:

Table 3-305. Function nvic_vector_table_set

Function name	nvic_vector_table_set
Function prototype	void nvic_vector_table_set(uint32_t nvic_vict_tab, uint32_t offset);

Function descriptions	set the NVIC vector table address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_vict_tab	the RAM or FLASH base address
<i>NVIC_VECTTAB_RAM</i>	RAM base address
<i>NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH</i>	Flash base address
Input parameter{in}	
Offset	Vector Table offset (vector table start address= base address+offset)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set vector table address = NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH +0x200 */
nvic_vector_table_set (NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH,0x200);
```

system_lowpower_set

The description of system_lowpower_set is shown as below:

Table 3-306. Function system_lowpower_set

Function name	system_lowpower_set
Function prototype	void system_lowpower_set(uint8_t lowpower_mode);
Function descriptions	the state of the low power mode management
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
lowpower_mode	the low power mode state
<i>SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR</i>	if chose this para, the system always enter low power mode by exiting from ISR
<i>SCB_LPM_DEEPSLEEP_P</i>	if chose this para, the system will enter the DEEPSLEEP mode
<i>SCB_LPM_WAKE_BY_ALL_INT</i>	if chose this para, the lowpower mode can be woke up by all the enable and disable interrupts
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* the system always enter low power mode by exiting from ISR */
```

```
system_lowpower_set(SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR);
```

system_lowpower_reset

The description of system_lowpower_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-307. Function system_lowpower_reset

Function name	system_lowpower_reset
Function prototype	void system_lowpower_reset(uint8_t lowpower_mode);
Function descriptions	the state of the low power mode management
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
lowpower_mode	the low power mode state
<i>SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR</i>	if chose this para, the system will exit low power mode by exiting from ISR
<i>SCB_LPM_DEEPSLEEP_P</i>	if chose this para, the system will enter the SLEEP mode
<i>SCB_LPM_WAKE_BY_ALL_INT</i>	if chose this para, the lowpower mode only can be woke up by the enable interrupts
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* the system will exit low power mode by exiting from ISR */
system_lowpower_reset(SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR);
```

systick_clksource_set

The description of systick_clksource_set is shown as below:

Table 3-308. Function systick_clksource_set

Function name	systick_clksource_set
Function prototype	void systick_clksource_set(uint32_t systick_clksource);
Function descriptions	set the systick clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
systick_clksource	the systick clock source needed to choose
<i>SYSTICK_CLKSOURCE_HCLK</i>	systick clock source is from HCLK
<i>SYSTICK_CLKSOURCE_HCLK_DIV8</i>	systick clock source is from HCLK/8

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* systick clock source is HCLK/8 */

systick_clksource_set(SYSTICK_CLKSOURCE_HCLK_DIV8);
```

3.16. PMU

According to the Power management unit (PMU), provides three types of power saving modes, including Sleep, Deep-sleep and Standby mode. The PMU registers are listed in chapter [3.16.1](#), the PMU firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.16.2](#).

3.16.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

PMU registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-309. PMU Registers

Registers	Descriptions
PMU_CTL	PMU control register
PMU_CS	PMU control and status register

3.16.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

PMU firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-310. PMU firmware function

Function name	Function description
pmu_deinit	reset PMU registers
pmu_lvd_select	select low voltage detector threshold
pmu_ldo_output_select	select LDO output voltage
pmu_lvd_disable	disable PMU lvd
pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable	enable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable	disable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
pmu_highdriver_mode_enable	enable high-driver mode
pmu_highdriver_mode_disable	disable high-driver mode
pmu_highdriver_switch_select	switch high-driver mode
pmu_lowpower_driver_config	in deep-sleep mode, low-driver mode when use low power LDO
pmu_normalpower_driver_config	in deep-sleep mode, low-driver mode when use normal power LDO

Function name	Function description
pmu_to_sleepmode	PMU work in sleep mode
pmu_to_deepsleepmode	PMU work at deepsleep mode
pmu_to_standbymode	pmu work at standby mode
pmu_wakeup_pin_enable	enable PMU wakeup pin
pmu_wakeup_pin_disable	disable PMU wakeup pin
pmu_backup_write_enable	enable backup domain write
pmu_backup_write_disable	disable backup domain write
pmu_flag_clear	clear flag bit
pmu_flag_get	get flag state

pmu_deinit

The description of pmu_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-311. Function pmu_deinit

Function name	pmu_deinit
Function prototype	void pmu_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset PMU register
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset PMU */
pmu_deinit();
```

pmu_lvd_select

The description of pmu_lvd_select is shown as below:

Table 3-312. Function pmu_lvd_select

Function name	pmu_lvd_select
Function prototype	void pmu_lvd_select(uint32_t lvdt_n);
Function descriptions	select low voltage detector threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
lvdt_n	voltage threshold value

<i>PMU_LVDT_0</i>	voltage threshold is 2.1V
<i>PMU_LVDT_1</i>	voltage threshold is 2.3V
<i>PMU_LVDT_2</i>	voltage threshold is 2.4V
<i>PMU_LVDT_3</i>	voltage threshold is 2.6V
<i>PMU_LVDT_4</i>	voltage threshold is 2.7V
<i>PMU_LVDT_5</i>	voltage threshold is 2.9V
<i>PMU_LVDT_6</i>	voltage threshold is 3.0V
<i>PMU_LVDT_7</i>	voltage threshold is 3.1V
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select low voltage detector threshold as 3.1V */
pmu_lvd_select (PMU_LVDT_7);
```

pmu_ldo_output_select

The description of pmu_ldo_output_select is shown as below:

Table 3-313. Function pmu_ldo_output_select

Function name	pmu_ldo_output_select
Function prototype	void pmu_ldo_output_select(uint32_t ldo_output);
Function descriptions	select LDO output voltage
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>ldo_output</i>	output voltage mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_LOW</i>	LDO output voltage low mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_MID</i>	LDO output voltage mid mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_HIGH</i>	LDO output voltage high mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select output low voltage mode */
pmu_ldo_output_select (PMU_LDOVS_LOW);
```

pmu_lvd_disable

The description of pmu_lvd_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-314. Function pmu_lvd_disable

Function name	pmu_lvd_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_lvd_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable PMU lvd
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable PMU lvd */
pmu_lvd_disable();
```

pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable

The description of pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-315. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable

Function name	pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode */
pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable();
```

pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable

The description of pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-316. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable

Function name	pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode */
pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable();
```

pmu_highdriver_mode_enable

The description of pmu_highdriver_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-317. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_enable

Function name	pmu_highdriver_mode_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_highdriver_mode_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable high-driver mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable high-driver mode */
pmu_highdriver_mode_enable();
```

pmu_highdriver_mode_disable

The description of pmu_highdriver_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-318. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_disable

Function name	pmu_highdriver_mode_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_highdriver_mode_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable high-driver mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable high-driver mode */
pmu_highdriver_mode_disable ( );
```

pmu_highdriver_switch_select

The description of pmu_highdriver_switch_select is shown as below:

Table 3-319. Function pmu_highdriver_switch_select

Function name	pmu_highdriver_switch_select
Function prototype	void pmu_highdriver_switch_select(uint32_t highdr_switch);
Function descriptions	switch high-driver mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
highdr_switch	enable or disable high-driver mode switch
PMU_HIGHDR_SWITC_H_NONE	disable high-driver mode switch
PMU_HIGHDR_SWITC_H_EN	enable high-driver mode switch
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable high-driver mode switch */
```

```
pmu_highdriver_switch_select(PMU_HIGHDR_SWITCH_EN);
```

pmu_lowpower_driver_config

The description of pmu_lowpower_driver_config is shown as below:

Table 3-320. Function pmu_lowpower_driver_config

Function name	pmu_lowpower_driver_config
Function prototype	void pmu_lowpower_driver_config (uint32_t mode);
Function descriptions	low-driver mode when use low power LDO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	Low power mode of LDO-
<i>PMU_NORMALDR_LO WPWR</i>	normal driver when use low power LDO
<i>PMU_LOWDR_LOWP WR</i>	low-driver mode enabled when LDEN is 11 and use low power LDO
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* normal driver when use low power LDO */
pmu_lowpower_driver_config (PMU_NORMALDR_LOWPWR);
```

pmu_normalpower_driver_config

The description of pmu_normalpower_driver_config is shown as below:

Table 3-321. Function pmu_normalpower_driver_config

Function name	pmu_normalpower_driver_config
Function prototype	void pmu_normalpower_driver_config (uint32_t mode);
Function descriptions	low-driver mode when use normal power LDO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	Driver mode when use normal power LDO-
<i>PMU_NORMALDR_NO RMALPWR</i>	normal driver when use normal power LDO
<i>PMU_LOWDR_NORM ALPWR</i>	low-driver mode enabled when LDEN is 11 and use normal power LDO
Output parameter{out}	

-	-	-
Return value		
-	-	-

Example:

```
/* normal driver when use normal power LDO */

pmu_normalpower_driver_config (PMU_NORMALDR_NORMALPWR);
```

pmu_to_sleepmode

The description of pmu_to_sleepmode is shown as below:

Table 3-322. Function pmu_to_sleepmode

Function name	pmu_to_sleepmode
Function prototype	void pmu_to_sleepmode(uint8_t sleepmodecmd);
Function descriptions	PMU work at sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sleepmodecmd	command to enter sleep mode
WFI_CMD	use WFI command
WFE_CMD	use WFE command
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at sleep mode */

pmu_to_sleepmode (WFI_CMD);
```

pmu_to_deepsleepmode

The description of pmu_to_deepsleepmode is shown as below:

Table 3-323. Function pmu_to_deepsleepmode

Function name	pmu_to_deepsleepmode
Function prototype	void pmu_to_deepsleepmode(uint32_t ldo, uint32_t lowdrive, uint8_t deepsleepmodecmd);
Function descriptions	PMU work at deepsleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ldo	ldo work mode

<i>PMU_LDO_NORMAL</i>	LDO operates normally when pmu enter deepsleep mode
<i>PMU_LDO_LOWPOWER</i>	LDO work at low power mode when pmu enter deepsleep mode
Input parameter{in}	
lowdrive	enabling and disabling the low-driver mode
<i>PMU_LOWDRIIVER_ENABLE</i>	low-driver mode enable in deep-sleep mode
<i>PMU_LOWDRIIVER_DISABLE</i>	low-driver mode disable in deep-sleep mode
Input parameter{in}	
<i>deepsleepmodecmd</i>	command to enter deepsleep mode
<i>WFI_CMD</i>	use WFI command
<i>WFE_CMD</i>	use WFE command
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at deepsleep mode */
pmu_to_deepsleepmode (PMU_LDO_NORMAL, WFI_CMD);
```

pmu_to_standbymode

The description of pmu_to_standbymode is shown as below:

Table 3-324. Function pmu_to_standbymode

Function name	pmu_to_standbymode
Function prototype	void pmu_to_standbymode(void);
Function descriptions	pmu work at standby mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at standby mode */
pmu_to_standbymode();
```

pmu_wakeup_pin_enable

The description of pmu_wakeup_pin_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-325. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_enable

Function name	pmu_wakeup_pin_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_wakeup_pin_enable(uint32_t wakeup_pin);
Function descriptions	enable wakeup pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
wakeup_pin	Wakeup pin
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN0	WKUP Pin 0 (PA0)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN1	WKUP Pin 1 (PC13)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN4	WKUP Pin 4 (PC5)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN5	WKUP Pin 5 (PB5)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN6	WKUP Pin 6 (PB15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable wakeup pin6 */
pmu_wakeup_pin_enable (PMU_WAKEUP_PIN6);
```

pmu_wakeup_pin_disable

The description of pmu_wakeup_pin_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-326. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_disable

Function name	pmu_wakeup_pin_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_wakeup_pin_disable(uint32_t wakeup_pin);
Function descriptions	disable wakeup pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
wakeup_pin	Wakeup pin
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN0	WKUP Pin 0 (PA0)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN1	WKUP Pin 1 (PC13)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN4	WKUP Pin 4 (PC5)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN5	WKUP Pin 5 (PB5)
PMU_WAKEUP_PIN6	WKUP Pin 6 (PB15)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-	-
Return value		
-	-	-

Example:

```
/* disable wakeup pin6 */
pmu_wakeup_pin_disable (PMU_WAKEUP_PIN6);
```

pmu_backup_write_enable

The description of pmu_backup_write_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-327. Function pmu_backup_write_enable

Function name	pmu_backup_write_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_backup_write_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable backup domain write
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable backup domain write */
pmu_backup_write_enable ();
```

pmu_backup_write_disable

The description of pmu_backup_write_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-328. Function pmu_backup_write_disable

Function name	pmu_backup_write_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_backup_write_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable backup domain write
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable backup domain write */
pmu_backup_write_disable();
```

pmu_flag_get

The description of pmu_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-329. Function pmu_flag_get

Function name	pmu_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus pmu_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag
PMU_FLAG_WAKEUP	wakeup flag
PMU_FLAG_STANDBY	standby flag
PMU_FLAG_LVD	lvd flag
PMU_FLAG_LDOVSR	LDO voltage select ready flag
PMU_FLAG_HDR	high-driver ready flag
PMU_FLAG_HDSR	high-driver switch ready flag
PMU_FLAG_LDR	low-driver mode ready flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get flag state */

FlagStatus status;

status = pmu_flag_get (PMU_FLAG_WAKEUP);
```

pmu_flag_clear

The description of pmu_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-330. Function pmu_flag_clear

Function name	pmu_flag_clear
Function prototype	void pmu_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear flag bit

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag_clear	flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_RESET_WAKEUP</i>	reset wakeup flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_RESET_STANDBY</i>	reset standby flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear flag bit */
pmu_flag_clear (PMU_FLAG_RESET_WAKEUP);
```

3.17. RCU

RCU is the reset and clock unit. Reset Control includes the control of three kinds of reset: power reset, system reset and backup domain reset. The Clock Control unit provides a range of frequencies and clock functions. The RCU registers are listed in chapter [3.17.1](#), the RCU firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.17.2](#).

3.17.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

Table 3-331. RCU Registers

Registers	Descriptions
RCU_CTL0	Control register 0
RCU_CFG0	Clock configuration register 0
RCU_INT	Clock interrupt register
RCU_APB2RST	APB2 reset register
RCU_APB1RST	APB1 reset register
RCU_AHBEN	AHB enable register
RCU_APB2EN	APB2 enable register
RCU_APB1EN	APB1 enable register
RCU_BDCTL	Backup domain control register
RCU_RSTSCK	Reset source/clock register
RCU_AHBRST	AHB reset register
RCU_CFG1	Clock configuration register 1
RCU_CFG2	Clock configuration register 2
RCU_CTL1	Control register 1

Registers	Descriptions
RCU_ADDCTL	Additional clock control register
RCU_ADDINT	Additional clock interrupt register
RCU_ADDAPB1EN	APB1 additional enable register
RCU_ADDAPB1RST	APB1 additional reset register
RCU_VKEY	Unlock voltage register
RCU_DSV	Deep-sleep mode voltage register

3.17.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

Table 3-332. RCU firmware function

Function name	Function description
rcu_deinit	deinitialize the RCU
rcu_periph_clock_enable	enable the peripherals clock
rcu_periph_clock_disable	disable the peripherals clock
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable	enable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable	disable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
rcu_periph_reset_enable	enable the peripherals reset
rcu_periph_reset_disable	disable the peripheral reset
rcu_bkp_reset_enable	enable the BKP domain reset
rcu_bkp_reset_disable	disable the BKP domain reset
rcu_system_clock_source_config	configure the system clock source
rcu_system_clock_source_get	get the system clock source
rcu_ahb_clock_config	configure the AHB clock prescaler selection
rcu_apb1_clock_config	configure the APB1 clock prescaler selection
rcu_apb2_clock_config	configure the APB2 clock prescaler selection
rcu_adc_clock_config	configure the ADC clock source and prescaler selection
rcu_usbfs_clock_config	configure the USBFS prescaler selection
rcu_ckout_config	configure the CK_OUT clock source and divider
rcu_pll_preselection_config	configure the PLL clock source preselection
rcu_pll_config	configure the main PLL clock
rcu_usart_clock_config	configure the usart clock
rcu_cec_clock_config	configure the CEC clock source selection
rcu_rtc_clock_config	configure the RTC clock source selection
rcu_ck48m_clock_config	configure the CK48M clock selection
rcu_hxtal_prediv_config	configure the HXTAL divider used as input of PLL
rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config	configure the LXTAL drive capability
rcu_flag_get	get the clock stabilization and periphral reset flags
rcu_all_reset_flag_clear	clear all the reset flag
rcu_interrupt_flag_get	get the clock stabilization interrupt and ckm flags
rcu_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the interrupt flags
rcu_interrupt_enable	enable the stabilization interrupt

Function name	Function description
rcu_interrupt_disable	disable the stabilization interrupt
rcu_osc1_stab_wait	wait for oscillator stabilization flags is SET or oscillator startup is timeout
rcu_osc1_on	turn on the oscillator
rcu_osc1_off	turn off the oscillator
rcu_osc1_bypass_mode_enable	enable the oscillator bypass mode
rcu_osc1_bypass_mode_disable	disable the oscillator bypass mode
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable	enable the HXTAL clock monitor
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable	disable the HXTAL clock monitor
rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set	set the IRC8M adjust value
rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set	set the IRC28M adjust value
rcu_voltage_key_unlock	unlock Deep-sleep mode voltage register
rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set	set the deep-sleep mode voltage value
rcu_clock_freq_get	get the system clock, bus clock frequency

rcu_periph_enum

Table 3-333. Enum rcu_periph_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_DMA	DMA clock
RCU_CRC	CRC clock
RCU_GPIOA	GPIOA clock
RCU_GPIOB	GPIOB clock
RCU_GPIOC	GPIOC clock
RCU_GPIOD	GPIOD clock
RCU_GPIOF	GPIOF clock
RCU_TSI	TSI clock
RCU_CFGCMP	CFGCMP clock
RCU_ADC	ADC clock
RCU_TIMER0	TIMER0 clock
RCU_SPI0	SPI0 clock
RCU_USART0	USART0 clock
RCU_TIMER14	TIMER14 clock
RCU_TIMER15	TIMER15 clock
RCU_TIMER16	TIMER16 clock
RCU_TIMER1	TIMER1 clock
RCU_TIMER2	TIMER2 clock
RCU_TIMER13	TIMER13 clock
RCU_WWDGT	WWDGT clock
RCU_SPI1	SPI1 clock
RCU_USART1	USART1 clock
RCU_I2C0	I2C0 clock

enum name	Function description
RCU_I2C1	I2C1 clock
RCU_PMU	PMU clock
RCU_DAC	DAC clock (only for GD32F350)
RCU_CEC	CEC clock (only for GD32F350)
RCU_TIMER5	TIMER5 clock (only for GD32F350)
RCU_USBFS	USBFS clock (only for GD32F350)
RCU_RTC	RTC clock
RCU_CTC	CTC clock

rcu_periph_sleep_enum

Table 3-334. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_SRAM_SLP	SRAM clock
RCU_FMC_SLP	FMC clock

rcu_periph_reset_enum

Table 3-335. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_GPIOARST	GPIOA reset
RCU_GPIOBRST	GPIOB reset
RCU_GPIOCRST	GPIOC reset
RCU_GPIODRST	GPIOD reset
RCU_GPIOFRST	GPIOF reset
RCU_TSIRST	TSI reset
RCU_CFGCMPRST	CFGCMP reset
RCU_ADCRST	ADC reset
RCU_TIMER0RST	TIMER0 reset
RCU_SPI0RST	SPI0 reset
RCU_USART0RST	USART0 reset
RCU_TIMER14RST	TIMER14 reset
RCU_TIMER15RST	TIMER15 reset
RCU_TIMER16RST	TIMER16 reset
RCU_TIMER1RST	TIMER1 reset
RCU_TIMER2RST	TIMER2 reset
RCU_TIMER13RST	TIMER13 reset
RCU_WWDGTRST	WWDG reset
RCU_SPI1RST	SPI1 reset
RCU_USART1RST	USART1 reset
RCU_I2C0RST	I2C0 reset
RCU_I2C1RST	I2C1 reset

enum name	Function description
RCU_PMURST	PMU reset
RCU_DACRST	DAC reset (only for GD32F350)
RCU_CECRST	CEC reset (only for GD32F350)
RCU_TIMER5RST	TIMER5 reset (only for GD32F350)
RCU_USBFSRST	USBFS reset (only for GD32F350)
RCU_CTCRST	CTC reset

rcu_flag_enum

Table 3-336. Enum rcu_flag_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_FLAG_IRC40K_STB	IRC40K stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_LXTAL_STB	LXTAL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC8M_STB	IRC8M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_HXTAL_STB	HXTAL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_PLLST_B	PLL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC28M_MSTB	IRC28M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC48M_MSTB	IRC48M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_V12RS_T	V12 domain Power reset flags
RCU_FLAG_OBLR_ST	Option byte loader reset flags
RCU_FLAG_EPRS_T	External PIN reset flags
RCU_FLAG_PORR_ST	Power reset flags
RCU_FLAG_SWRS_T	Software reset flags
RCU_FLAG_FWDG_TRST	Free Watchdog timer reset flags
RCU_FLAG_WWD_GTRST	Window watchdog timer reset flags
RCU_FLAG_LPRST	Low-power reset flags

rcu_int_flag_enum

Table 3-337. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C40KSTB	IRC40K stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_L_XTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_H_XTALSTB	HXTAL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_P_LLSTB	PLL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C28MSTB	IRC28M stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_C_KM	CKM interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C48MSTB	IRC48M stabilization interrupt flag

rcu_int_flag_clear_enum

Table 3-338. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C40KSTB_CLR	IRC40K stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_L_XTALSTB_CLR	LXTAL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C8MSTB_CLR	IRC8M stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_H_XTALSTB_CLR	HXTAL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_P_LLSTB_CLR	PLL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C28MSTB_CLR	IRC28M stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_C_KM_CLR	CKM interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IR_C48MSTB_CLR	IRC48M stabilization interrupt flag clear

rcu_int_enum

Table 3-339. Enum rcu_int_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_IRC40KS_TB	IRC40K stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_LXTALS_TB	LXTAL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_IRC8MS_TB	IRC8M stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_HXTALS_TB	HXTAL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_IRC28M_STB	IRC28M stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_IRC48M_STB	IRC48M stabilization interrupt

rcu_adc_clock_enum

Table 3-340. Enum rcu_adc_clock_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_ADCCK_IRC2_8M_DIV2	ADC clock source select IRC28M/2
RCU_ADCCK_IRC2_8M	ADC clock source select IRC28M
RCU_ADCCK_APB_2_DIV2	ADC clock source select APB2/2
RCU_ADCCK_AHB_DIV3	ADC clock source select AHB/3
RCU_ADCCK_APB_2_DIV4	ADC clock source select APB2/4
RCU_ADCCK_AHB_DIV5	ADC clock source select AHB/5
RCU_ADCCK_APB_2_DIV6	ADC clock source select APB2/6
RCU_ADCCK_AHB_DIV7	ADC clock source select AHB/7
RCU_ADCCK_APB_2_DIV8	ADC clock source select APB2/8
RCU_ADCCK_AHB_DIV9	ADC clock source select AHB/9

rcu_osc_type_enum

Table 3-341. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_HXTAL	HXTAL
RCU_LXTAL	LXTAL
RCU_IRC8M	IRC8M
RCU_IRC28M	IRC28M
RCU_IRC48M	IRC48M
RCU_IRC40K	IRC40K
RCU_PLL_CK	PLL

rcu_clock_freq_enum

Table 3-342. Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum

enum name	Function description
CK_SYS	system clock
CK_AHB	AHB clock
CK_APB1	APB1 clock
CK_APB2	APB2 clock
CK_ADC	ADC clock
CK_CEC	CEC clock
CK_USART	USART clock

rcu_deinit

The description of rcu_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-343. Function rcu_deinit

Function name	rcu_deinit
Function prototype	void rcu_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the RCU, reset the value of all RCU registers into initial values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset RCU */
```

```
rcu_deinit();
```

rcu_periph_clock_enable

The description of rcu_periph_clock_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-344. Function rcu_periph_clock_enable

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_enable(rcu_periph_enum periph);
Function descriptions	enable the peripherals clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-333. Enum rcu_periph_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the USART0 clock */
rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_USART0);
```

rcu_periph_clock_disable

The description of rcu_periph_clock_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-345. Function rcu_periph_clock_disable

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_disable(rcu_periph_enum periph);
Function descriptions	disable the peripherals clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-333. Enum rcu_periph_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the USART0 clock */
rcu_periph_clock_disable(RCU_USART0);
```

rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable

The description of `rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-346. Function `rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable`

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable(rcu_periph_sleep_enum periph);
Function descriptions	enable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-334. Enum <code>rcu_periph_sleep_enum</code>.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the FMC clock when in sleep mode */
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable(RCU_FMC_SLP);
```

rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable

The description of `rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-347. Function `rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable`

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable(rcu_periph_sleep_enum periph);
Function descriptions	disable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-334. Enum <code>rcu_periph_sleep_enum</code>.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the FMC clock when in sleep mode */
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable(RCU_FMC_SLP);
```

rcu_periph_reset_enable

The description of `rcu_periph_reset_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-348. Function `rcu_periph_reset_enable`

Function name	rcu_periph_reset_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_reset_enable(rcu_periph_reset_enum periph_reset);
Function descriptions	enable the peripherals reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph_reset	RCU peripherals reset, refer to Table 3-335. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 reset */
rcu_periph_reset_enable(RCU_SPI0RST);
```

rcu_periph_reset_disable

The description of `rcu_periph_reset_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-349. Function `rcu_periph_reset_disable`

Function name	rcu_periph_reset_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_reset_disable(rcu_periph_reset_enum periph_reset);
Function descriptions	disable the peripheral reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph_reset	RCU peripherals reset, refer to Table 3-335. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 reset */
rcu_periph_reset_disable(RCU_SPI0RST);
```

rcu_bkp_reset_enable

The description of rcu_bkp_reset_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-350. Function rcu_bkp_reset_enable

Function name	rcu_bkp_reset_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_bkp_reset_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the BKP domain reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the BKP domain */
rcu_bkp_reset_enable();
```

rcu_bkp_reset_disable

The description of rcu_bkp_reset_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-351. Function rcu_bkp_reset_disable

Function name	rcu_bkp_reset_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_bkp_reset_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the BKP domain reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the BKP domain reset */
rcu_bkp_reset_disable();
```

rcu_system_clock_source_config

The description of `rcu_system_clock_source_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-352. Function `rcu_system_clock_source_config`

Function name	<code>rcu_system_clock_source_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void rcu_system_clock_source_config(uint32_t ck_sys);</code>
Function descriptions	configure the system clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>ck_sys</code>	system clock source select
<code>RCU_CKSYSRC_IRC8M</code>	select CK_IRC8M as the CK_SYS source
<code>RCU_CKSYSRC_HXTAL</code>	select CK_HXTAL as the CK_SYS source
<code>RCU_CKSYSRC_PLL</code>	select CK_PLL as the CK_SYS source
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK_HXTAL as the CK_SYS source */
rcu_system_clock_source_config(RCU_CKSYSRC_HXTAL);
```

rcu_system_clock_source_get

The description of `rcu_system_clock_source_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-353. Function `rcu_system_clock_source_get`

Function name	<code>rcu_system_clock_source_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint32_t rcu_system_clock_source_get(void);</code>
Function descriptions	get the system clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>uint32_t</code>	RCU_SCSS_IRC8M/RCU_SCSS_HXTAL/RCU_SCSS_PLL

Example:

```

uint32_t temp_cksys_status;

/* get the CK_SYS source */

temp_cksys_status = rcu_system_clock_source_get();
  
```

rcu_ahb_clock_config

The description of `rcu_ahb_clock_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-354. Function `rcu_ahb_clock_config`

Function name	rcu_ahb_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_ahb_clock_config(uint32_t ck_ahb);
Function descriptions	configure the AHB clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_ahb	AHB clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_AHB_CKSYS_DI Vx</i>	select CK_SYS / x, (x=1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 64, 128, 256, 512)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure CK_SYS/128 */

rcu_ahb_clock_config(RCU_AHB_CKSYS_DIV128);
  
```

rcu_apb1_clock_config

The description of `rcu_apb1_clock_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-355. Function `rcu_apb1_clock_config`

Function name	rcu_apb1_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_apb1_clock_config(uint32_t ck_apb1);
Function descriptions	configure the APB1 clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_apb1	APB1 clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_D IVx</i>	select (CK_AHB / x) as CK_APB1 (x=1,2,4,8,16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB1 */
rcu_apb1_clock_config(RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV16);
```

rcu_apb2_clock_config

The description of rcu_apb2_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-356. Function rcu_apb2_clock_config

Function name	rcu_apb2_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_apb2_clock_config(uint32_t ck_apb2);
Function descriptions	configure the APB2 clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_apb2	APB2 clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D /Vx</i>	select (CK_AHB / x) as CK_APB2 clock (x=1,2,4,8,16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB2 */
rcu_apb2_clock_config(RCU_APB2_CKAHB_DIV8);
```

rcu_adc_clock_config

The description of rcu_adc_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-357. Function rcu_adc_clock_config

Function name	rcu_adc_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_adc_clock_config(rcu_adc_clock_enum ck_adc);
Function descriptions	configure the ADC clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_adc	ADC clock prescaler selection, refer to Table 3-340. Enum rcu_adc_clock_enum .
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the ADC prescaler factor */
rcu_adc_clock_config(RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV8);
```

rcu_usbfs_clock_config

The description of `rcu_usbfs_clock_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-358. Function `rcu_usbfs_clock_config`

Function name	<code>rcu_usbfs_clock_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void rcu_usbfs_clock_config(uint32_t ck_usbfs);</code>
Function descriptions	configure the USBFS clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>ck_usbfs</code>	USBFS clock prescaler selection
<code>RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV1</code>	select CK_PLL as CK_USBFS
<code>RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV1_5</code>	select CK_PLL / 1.5 as CK_USBFS
<code>RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV2</code>	select CK_PLL / 2 as CK_USBFS
<code>RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV2_5</code>	select CK_PLL / 2.5 as CK_USBFS
<code>RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV3</code>	select CK_PLL / 3 as CK_USBFS
<code>RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV3_5</code>	select CK_PLL / 3.5 as CK_USBFS
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK_PLL as CK_USBFS */
rcu_usbfs_clock_config(RCU_USBFS_CKPLL_DIV1);
```

rcu_ckout_config

The description of rcu_ckout_config is shown as below:

Table 3-359. Function rcu_ckout_config

Function name	rcu_ckout_config
Function prototype	void rcu_ckout_config(uint32_t ckout_src, uint32_t ckout_div);
Function descriptions	configure the CK_OUT clock source and division factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ckout_src	CK_OUT clock source selection
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_NO NE</i>	no clock selected
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_IRC 28M</i>	select high speed 28M internal oscillator clock
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_IRC 40K</i>	select high speed 40K internal oscillator clock
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_LX TAL</i>	select LXTAL clock
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_CK SYS</i>	select system clock CK_SYS
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_IRC 8M</i>	select high speed 8M internal oscillator clock
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_HX TAL</i>	select HXTAL clock
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_CK PLL_DIV1</i>	select CK_PLL clock
<i>RCU_CKOUTSRC_CK PLL_DIV2</i>	Select (CK_PLL / 2) clock
Input parameter{in}	
ckout_div	CK_OUT divider
<i>RCU_CKOUT_DIVx</i>	CK_OUT is divided by x(x=1,2,4,8,16,32,64,128)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the HXTAL as CK_OUT clock source */
rcu_ckout_config(RCU_CKOUTSRC_HXTAL);
```

rcu_pll_preselection_config

The description of rcu_pll_preselection_config is shown as below:

Table 3-360. Function rcu_pll_preselection_config

Function name	rcu_pll_preselection_config
Function prototype	void rcu_pll_preselection_config(uint32_t pll_presel);
Function descriptions	configure the PLL clock source preselection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pll_presel	PLL clock source selection
<i>RCU_PLLPRESEL_IR</i> C48M	select IRC48M as PLL preselection clock
<i>RCU_PLLPRESEL_HXTAL</i>	select HXTAL as PLL preselection clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select HXTAL as PLL preselection clock */
rcu_pll_preselection_config(RCU_PLLPRESEL_HXTAL);
```

rcu_pll_config

The description of rcu_pll_config is shown as below:

Table 3-361. Function rcu_pll_config

Function name	rcu_pll_config
Function prototype	void rcu_pll_config(uint32_t pll_src, uint32_t pll_mul);
Function descriptions	configure the PLL clock source selection and PLL multiply factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pll_src	PLL clock source selection
<i>RCU_PLLSRC_IRC8M_DIV2</i>	select CK_IRC8M/2 as PLL source clock
<i>RCU_PLLSRC_HXTAL_IRC48M</i>	select HXTAL or IRC48M as PLL source clock
Input parameter{in}	
pll_mul	PLL clock multiplication factor
<i>RCU_PLL_MULx</i>	PLL source clock * x (x = 2..64)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL */
rcu_pll_config(RCU_PLLSRC_HXTAL_IRC48M, RCU_PLL_MUL10);
```

rcu_usart_clock_config

The description of rcu_usart_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-362. Function rcu_usart_clock_config

Function name	rcu_usart_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_usart_clock_config(uint32_t ck_usart);
Function descriptions	configure the USART clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_usart	USART clock source selection
<i>RCU_USART0SRC_C KAPB2</i>	CK_USART0 select CK_APB2
<i>RCU_USART0SRC_C KSYS</i>	CK_USART0 select CK_SYS
<i>RCU_USART0SRC_LX TAL</i>	CK_USART0 select CK_LXTAL
<i>RCU_USART0SRC_IR C8M</i>	CK_USART0 select CK_IRC8M
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the LXTAL as USART0 clock */
rcu_usart_clock_config(RCU_USART0SRC_LXTAL);
```

rcu_cec_clock_config

The description of rcu_cec_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-363. Function rcu_cec_clock_config

Function name	rcu_cec_clock_config
---------------	----------------------

Function prototype	void rcu_cec_clock_config(uint32_t ck_cec);
Function descriptions	configure the CEC clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_cec	CEC clock source selection
<i>RCU_CECSRC_IRC8M_DIV244</i>	CK_CEC select CK_IRC8M/244
<i>RCU_CECSRC_LXTAL</i>	select CK_LXTAL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CEC clock source selection */
rcu_cec_clock_config(RCU_CECSRC_LXTAL);
```

rcu_rtc_clock_config

The description of `rcu_rtc_clock_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-364. Function `rcu_rtc_clock_config`

Function name	rcu_rtc_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_rtc_clock_config(uint32_t rtc_clock_source);
Function descriptions	configure the RTC clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
rtc_clock_source	RTC clock source selection
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_NONE</i>	no clock selected
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_LXTAL</i>	select CK_LXTAL as RTC source clock
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_IRC40K</i>	select CK_IRC40K as RTC source clock
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_HXTAL_DIV_32</i>	select (CK_HXTAL / 32) as RTC source clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the RTC clock source selection */
rcu_rtc_clock_config(RCU_RTCSRC_LXTAL);
```

```
rcu_rtc_clock_config(RCU_RTCSRC_IRC40K);
```

rcu_ck48m_clock_config

The description of rcu_ck48m_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-365. Function rcu_ck48m_clock_config

Function name	rcu_ck48m_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_ck48m_clock_config(uint32_t ck48m_clock_source);
Function descriptions	configure the CK48M clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck48m_clock_source	CK48M clock source selection
<i>RCU_CK48MSRC_PLL 48M</i>	CK_PLL48M selected as CK48M source clock
<i>RCU_CK48MSRC_IRC 48M</i>	CK_IRC48M selected as CK48M source clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK_48M clock source selection */
rcu_ck48m_clock_config (RCU_CK48MSRC_IRC48M);
```

rcu_hxtal_prediv_config

The description of rcu_hxtal_prediv_config is shown as below:

Table 3-366. Function rcu_hxtal_prediv_config

Function name	rcu_hxtal_prediv_config
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_prediv_config(uint32_t hxtal_prediv)
Function descriptions	configure the HXTAL divider used as input of PLL
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
hxtal_prediv	HXTAL divider used as input of PLL
<i>RCU_PLL_PREDVx</i>	HXTAL or IRC48M divided x used as input of PLL (x=1..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL clock source selection*/
rcu_hxtal_prediv_config(RCU_PLL_PREDV2);
```

rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config

The description of `rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-367. Function `rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config`

Function name	rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config
Function prototype	void rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config(uint32_t lxtal_dricap);
Function descriptions	configure the LXTAL drive capability
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>lxtal_dricap</i>	drive capability of LXTAL
<i>RCU_LXTAL_LOWDRI</i>	lower driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_MED_LOWDRI</i>	medium low driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_MED_GHDRI</i>	medium high driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_HIGHDRI</i>	higher driving capability
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the LXTAL drive capability */
rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config (RCU_LXTAL_LOWDRI);
```

rcu_flag_get

The description of `rcu_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-368. Function `rcu_flag_get`

Function name	rcu_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus rcu_flag_get(rcu_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	get the clock stabilization and periphral reset flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>flag</i>	the clock stabilization and periphral reset flags, refer to Table 3-336. Enum

	<u>rcu_flag_enum</u>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the clock stabilization flag */

if(RESET != rcu_flag_get(RCU_FLAG_LXTALSTB)){
}
```

rcu_all_reset_flag_clear

The description of **rcu_all_reset_flag_clear** is shown as below:

Table 3-369. Function rcu_all_reset_flag_clear

Function name	rcu_all_reset_flag_clear
Function prototype	void rcu_all_reset_flag_clear(void);
Function descriptions	clear all the reset flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear all the reset flag */

rcu_all_reset_flag_clear();
```

rcu_interrupt_flag_get

The description of **rcu_interrupt_flag_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-370. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	rcu_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus rcu_interrupt_flag_get(rcu_int_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	get the clock stabilization interrupt and ckm flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

int_flag	interrupt and ckm flags, refer to Table 3-337. Enum rcu_int_flag enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the clock stabilization interrupt flag */

if(SET == rcu_interrupt_flag_get(RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB)){

}
```

rcu_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of rcu_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-371. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	rcu_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void rcu_interrupt_flag_clear(rcu_int_flag_clear_enum int_flag_clear)
Function descriptions	clear the interrupt flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag_clear	clock stabilization and stuck interrupt flags clear, refer to Table 3-338. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the interrupt HXTAL stabilization interrupt flag */

rcu_interrupt_flag_clear(RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB_CLR);
```

rcu_interrupt_enable

The description of rcu_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-372. Function rcu_interrupt_enable

Function name	rcu_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_interrupt_enable(rcu_int_enum stab_int);
Function descriptions	enable the stabilization interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
stab_int	clock stabilization interrupt, refer to Table 3-339. Enum rcu_int_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the HXTAL stabilization interrupt */
rcu_interrupt_enable(RCU_INT_HXTALSTB);
```

rcu_interrupt_disable

The description of `rcu_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-373. Function `rcu_interrupt_disable`

Function name	rcu_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_interrupt_disable(rcu_int_enum stab_int);
Function descriptions	disable the stabilization interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
stab_int	clock stabilization interrupt, refer to Table 3-339. Enum rcu_int_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the HXTAL stabilization interrupt */
rcu_interrupt_disable(RCU_INT_HXTALSTB);
```

rcu_oscil_stab_wait

The description of `rcu_oscil_stab_wait` is shown as below:

Table 3-374. Function `rcu_oscil_stab_wait`

Function name	rcu_oscil_stab_wait
Function prototype	ErrStatus rcu_oscil_stab_wait(rcu_oscil_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	wait for oscillator stabilization flags is SET or oscillator startup is timeout
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-341. Enum rcu_oscil_type_enum .

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS or ERROR

Example:

```
/* wait for oscillator stabilization flag */

if(SUCCESS == rcu_osc_stab_wait(RCU_HXTAL)){
}
```

rcu_osc_on

The description of **rcu_osc_on** is shown as below:

Table 3-375. Function **rcu_osc_on**

Function name	rcu_osc_on
Function prototype	void rcu_osc_on(rcu_osc_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	turn on the oscillator
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-341. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn on the high speed crystal oscillator */

rcu_osc_on(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_osc_off

The description of **rcu_osc_off** is shown as below:

Table 3-376. Function **rcu_osc_off**

Function name	rcu_osc_off
Function prototype	void rcu_osc_off(rcu_osc_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	turn off the oscillator
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-341. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum .

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn off the high speed crystal oscillator */
rcu_osc_i_off(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable

The description of **rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-377. Function **rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable**

Function name	rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable(rcu_osc_i_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	enable the oscillator bypass mode
Precondition	HXTALEN or LXTALEN must be reset before it
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-341. Enum rcu_osc_i_type_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the high speed crystal oscillator bypass mode */
rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_disable

The description of **rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-378. Function **rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_disable**

Function name	rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_disable(rcu_osc_i_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	disable the oscillator bypass mode
Precondition	HXTALEN or LXTALEN must be reset before it
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-341. Enum rcu_osc_i_type_enum .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the high speed crystal oscillator bypass mode */
rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable

The description of rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-379. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable

Function name	rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the HXTAL clock monitor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the HXTAL clock monitor */
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable();
```

rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable

The description of rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-380. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable

Function name	rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the HXTAL clock monitor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the HXTAL clock monitor */

rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable();
```

rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set

The description of `rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-381. Function `rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set`

Function name	rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set
Function prototype	void rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set(uint32_t irc8m_adjval);
Function descriptions	set the IRC8M adjust value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
irc8m_adjval	IRC8M adjust value, must be between 0 and 0x1F
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the IRC8M adjust value */

rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set(0x10);
```

rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set

The description of `rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-382. Function `rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set`

Function name	rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set
Function prototype	void rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set(uint32_t irc28m_adjval);
Function descriptions	set the IRC28M adjust value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
irc28m_adjval	IRC28M adjust value, must be between 0 and 0x1F
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* set the IRC28M adjust value */

rcu_irc28m_adjust_value_set(0x10);

```

rcu_voltage_key_unlock

The description of `rcu_voltage_key_unlock` is shown as below:

Table 3-383. Function `rcu_voltage_key_unlock`

Function name	rcu_voltage_key_unlock
Function prototype	void <code>rcu_voltage_key_unlock</code> (void);
Function descriptions	unlock the voltage key
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* unlock the voltage key */

rcu_voltage_key_unlock();

```

rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set

The description of `rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-384. Function `rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set`

Function name	rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set
Function prototype	void <code>rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set(uint32_t dsvol)</code> ;
Function descriptions	set voltage in deep sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dsvol	deep sleep mode voltage
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_0</i>	the core voltage is default value in deep-sleep mode
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_1</i>	the core voltage is (default value - 0.1) V in deep-sleep mode (customers are not recommended to use it)
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_2</i>	the core voltage is (default value - 0.2) V in deep-sleep mode(customers are not recommended to use it)
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_3</i>	the core voltage is (default value - 0.3) V in deep-sleep mode(customers are not recommended to use it)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the deep-sleep mode voltage */
rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set(RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_0);
```

rcu_clock_freq_get

The description of rcu_clock_freq_get is shown as below:

Table 3-385. Function rcu_clock_freq_get

Function name	rcu_clock_freq_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rcu_clock_freq_get(rcu_clock_freq_enum clock);
Function descriptions	get the system clock, bus clock and peripheral clock frequency
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
clock	the clock frequency which to get
CK_SYS	system clock frequency
CK_AHB	AHB clock frequency
CK_APB1	APB1 clock frequency
CK_APB2	APB2 clock frequency
CK_ADC	ADC clock frequency
CK_CEC	CEC clock frequency
CK_USART	USART clock frequency
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	clock frequency of system, AHB, APB1, APB2, ADC or USART

Example:

```
uint32_t temp_freq;
/* get the system clock frequency */
temp_freq = rcu_clock_freq_get(CK_SYS);
```

3.18. RTC

The Real-time Clock (RTC) is usually used as a clock-calendar. The ones in the Backup Domain consist of a 32-bit up-counter, an alarm, a prescaler, a divider and the RTC clock

configuration register. The RTC registers are listed in chapter [3.18.1](#), the RTC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.18.2](#).

3.18.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

RTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-386. RTC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
RTC_TIME	RTC time of day register
RTC_DATE	RTC date register
RTC_CTL	RTC control register
RTC_STAT	RTC status register
RTC_PSC	RTC time prescaler register
RTC_ALRM0TD	RTC alarm 0 time and date register
RTC_WPK	RTC write protection key register
RTC_SS	RTC sub second register
RTC_SHIFTCTL	RTC shift function control register
RTC_TTS	RTC time of timestamp register
RTC_DTS	RTC date of timestamp register
RTC_SSTS	RTC sub second of timestamp register
RTC_HRFC	RTC high resolution frequency compensation register
RTC_TAMP	RTC tamper register
RTC_ALRM0SS	RTC alarm 0 sub second register
RTC_BKP0	RTC backup 0 register
RTC_BKP1	RTC backup 1 register
RTC_BKP2	RTC backup 2 register
RTC_BKP3	RTC backup 3 register
RTC_BKP4	RTC backup 4 register

3.18.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

RTC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-387. RTC firmware function

Function name	Function description
rtc_deinit	reset most of the RTC registers
rtc_init	initialize RTC registers
rtc_init_mode_enter	enter RTC init mode
rtc_init_mode_exit	exit RTC init mode
rtc_register_sync_wait	wait until RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE registers are synchronized with APB clock, and the shadow registers are updated
rtc_current_time_get	get current time and date

Function name	Function description
rtc_subsecond_get	get current subsecond value
rtc_alarm_config	configure RTC alarm
rtc_alarm_subsecond_config	configure subsecond of RTC alarm
rtc_alarm_get	get RTC alarm
rtc_alarm_subsecond_get	get RTC alarm subsecond
rtc_alarm_enable	enable RTC alarm
rtc_alarm_disable	disable RTC alarm
rtc_timestamp_enable	enable RTC time-stamp
rtc_timestamp_disable	disable RTC time-stamp
rtc_timestamp_get	get RTC timestamp time and date
rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get	get RTC time-stamp subsecond
rtc_tamper_enable	enable RTC tamper
rtc_tamper_disable	disable RTC tamper
rtc_interrupt_enable	enable specified RTC interrupt
rtc_interrupt_disable	disable specified RTC interrupt
rtc_flag_get	check specified flag
rtc_flag_clear	clear specified flag
rtc_alter_output_config	configure RTC alternate output source
rtc_calibration_config	configure RTC calibration register
rtc_hour_adjust	adjust the daylight saving time by adding or subtracting one hour from the current time
rtc_second_adjust	adjust RTC second or subsecond value of current time
rtc_bypass_shadow_enable	enable RTC bypass shadow registers function
rtc_bypass_shadow_disable	disable RTC bypass shadow registers function
rtc_refclock_detection_enable	enable RTC reference clock detection function
rtc_refclock_detection_disable	disable RTC reference clock detection function

Structure `rtc_parameter_struct`

Table 3-388. Structure `rtc_parameter_struct`

Member name	Function description
rtc_year	RTC year value: 0x0 - 0x99 (BCD format)
rtc_month	RTC month value
rtc_date	RTC date value: 0x1 - 0x31 (BCD format)
rtc_day_of_week	RTC weekday value
rtc_hour	RTC hour value
rtc_minute	RTC minute value: 0x0 - 0x59 (BCD format)
rtc_second	RTC second value: 0x0 - 0x59 (BCD format)
rtc_factor_asyn	RTC asynchronous prescaler value: 0x0 - 0x7F
rtc_factor_syn	RTC synchronous prescaler value: 0x0 - 0x7FFF
rtc_am_pm	RTC AM / PM value
rtc_display_format	RTC time notation

Structure rtc_alarm_struct

Table 3-389. Structure rtc_alarm_struct

Member name	Function description
rtc_alarm_mask	RTC alarm mask
rtc_weekday_or_date	specify RTC alarm is on date or weekday
rtc_alarm_day	RTC alarm date or weekday value
rtc_alarm_hour	RTC alarm hour value
rtc_alarm_minute	RTC alarm minute value: 0x0 - 0x59 (BCD format)
rtc_alarm_second	RTC alarm second value: 0x0 - 0x59 (BCD format)
rtc_am_pm	RTC alarm AM / PM value

Structure rtc_timestamp_struct

Table 3-390. Structure rtc_timestamp_struct

Member name	Function description
rtc_timestamp_month	RTC time-stamp month value
rtc_timestamp_date	RTC time-stamp date value: 0x1 - 0x31 (BCD format)
rtc_timestamp_day	RTC time-stamp weekday value
rtc_timestamp_hour	RTC time-stamp hour value
rtc_timestamp_minute	RTC time-stamp minute value: 0x0 - 0x59 (BCD format)
rtc_timestamp_second	RTC time-stamp second value: 0x0 - 0x59 (BCD format)
rtc_am_pm	RTC time-stamp AM / PM value

Structure rtc_tamper_struct

Table 3-391. Structure rtc_tamper_struct

Member name	Function description
rtc_tamper_source	RTC tamper source
rtc_tamper_trigger	RTC tamper trigger
rtc_tamper_filter	RTC tamper consecutive samples needed during a voltage level detection
rtc_tamper_sample_frequency	RTC tamper sampling frequency during a voltage level detection
rtc_tamper_precharge_enable	RTC tamper precharge feature during a voltage level detection
rtc_tamper_precharge_time	RTC tamper precharge duration if precharge feature is enabled
rtc_tamper_with_timestamp	RTC tamper time-stamp feature

rtc_deinit

The description of rtc_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-392. Function rtc_deinit

Function name	rtc_deinit
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset most of the RTC registers
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
ErrStatus error_status;

/* reset most of the RTC registers */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_deinit ( );
```

rtc_init

The description of rtc_init is shown as below:

Table 3-393. Function rtc_init

Function name	rtc_init
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_init(rtc_parameter_struct* rtc_initpara_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize RTC registers
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
rtc_initpara_struct	pointer to a rtc_parameter_struct structure which contains parameters for initialization of the rtc peripheral, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-388. Structure rtc_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
rtc_parameter_struct rtc_initpara_struct;

ErrStatus error_status;
```

```

/* initialize RTC registers */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_init (& rtc_initpara_struct);

```

rtc_init_mode_enter

The description of `rtc_init_mode_enter` is shown as below:

Table 3-394. Function `rtc_init_mode_enter`

Function name	rtc_init_mode_enter
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_init_mode_enter(void);
Function descriptions	enter RTC init mode
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```

/* enter RTC init mode */

ErrStatus error_status;

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_init_mode_enter ( );

```

rtc_init_mode_exit

The description of `rtc_init_mode_exit` is shown as below:

Table 3-395. Function `rtc_init_mode_exit`

Function name	rtc_init_mode_exit
Function prototype	void rtc_init_mode_exit(void);
Function descriptions	exit RTC init mode
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* exit RTC init mode */

rtc_init_mode_exit ( );

```

rtc_register_sync_wait

The description of rtc_register_sync_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-396. Function rtc_register_sync_wait

Function name	rtc_register_sync_wait
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_register_sync_wait(void);
Function descriptions	wait until RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE registers are synchronized with APB clock, and the shadow registers are updated
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* wait until RTC_TIME and RTC_DATE registers are synchronized with APB clock, and the
shadow registers are updated */

ErrStatus error_status;

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_register_sync_wait ( );
```

rtc_current_time_get

The description of rtc_current_time_get is shown as below:

Table 3-397. Function rtc_current_time_get

Function name	rtc_current_time_get
Function prototype	void rtc_current_time_get(rtc_parameter_struct* rtc_initpara_struct);
Function descriptions	get current time and date
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
rtc_initpara_struct	pointer to a rtc_parameter_struct structure which contains parameters for initialization of the rtc peripheral, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-388. Structure rtc_parameter_struct
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
rtc_parameter_struct rtc_initpara_struct;
```

```

/* get current time and date */

rtc_current_time_get (&rtc_initpara_struct);

```

rtc_subsecond_get

The description of rtc_subsecond_get is shown as below:

Table 3-398. Function rtc_subsecond_get

Function name	rtc_subsecond_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rtc_subsecond_get(void);
Function descriptions	get current subsecond value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	current subsecond value(0x00-0xFFFF)

Example:

```

uint32_t sub_second;

/* get current subsecond value */

uint32_t sub_second = rtc_subsecond_get ( );

```

rtc_alarm_config

The description of rtc_alarm_config is shown as below:

Table 3-399. Function rtc_alarm_config

Function name	rtc_alarm_config
Function prototype	void rtc_alarm_config(rtc_alarm_struct* rtc_alarm_time)
Function descriptions	configure RTC alarm
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
rtc_alarm_time	pointer to a rtc_alarm_struct structure which contains parameters for RTC alarm configuration, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-389. Structure rtc_alarm_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

rtc_alarm_struct rtc_alarm_time;

/* rtc_alarm_config */

rtc_alarm_config (&rtc_alarm_time);

```

rtc_alarm_subsecond_config

The description of `rtc_alarm_subsecond_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-400. Function `rtc_alarm_subsecond_config`

Function name	rtc_alarm_subsecond_config
Function prototype	void rtc_alarm_subsecond_config(uint32_t mask_subsecond, uint32_t subsecond);
Function descriptions	configure subsecond of RTC alarm
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
mask_subsecond	alarm subsecond mask
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_0_14</i>	mask alarm subsecond configuration
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_1_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:1], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_2_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:2], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[1:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_3_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:3], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[2:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_4_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:4], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[3:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_5_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:5], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[4:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_6_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:6], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[5:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_7_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:7], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[6:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_8_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:8], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[7:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_9_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:9], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[8:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_10_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:10], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[9:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_11_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:11], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[10:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_12_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:12], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[11:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_13_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:13], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[12:0] is to be compared

<i>RTC_MASKSSC_14</i>	mask RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14], and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[13:0] is to be compared
<i>RTC_MASKSSC_NONE</i>	mask none, and RTC_ALRM0SS_SSC[14:0] is to be compared
Input parameter{in}	
subsecond	alarm subsecond value(0x000 - 0x7FFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure subsecond of RTC alarm */
rtc_subsecond_config (RTC_MASKSSC_9_14, 0x7FFF);
```

rtc_alarm_get

The description of `rtc_alarm_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-401. Function `rtc_alarm_get`

Function name	rtc_alarm_get
Function prototype	void rtc_alarm_get(rtc_alarm_struct* rtc_alarm_time);
Function descriptions	get RTC alarm
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
rtc_alarm_time	pointer to a <code>rtc_alarm_struct</code> structure which contains parameters for RTC alarm configuration, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-389. Structure <code>rtc_alarm_struct</code>
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
rtc_alarm_struct rtc_alarm_time;
/* get RTC alarm */
rtc_alarm_get (&rtc_alarm_time);
```

rtc_alarm_subsecond_get

The description of `rtc_alarm_subsecond_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-402. Function rtc_alarm_subsecond_get

Function name	rtc_alarm_subsecond_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rtc_alarm_subsecond_get(void);
Function descriptions	get RTC alarm subsecond
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	RTC alarm subsecond value(0x0-0x7FFF)

Example:

```
uint32_t subsecond;
/* get RTC alarm subsecond */
uint32_t subsecond = rtc_alarm_subsecond_get();
```

rtc_alarm_enable

The description of `rtc_alarm_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-403. Function rtc_alarm_enable

Function name	rtc_alarm_enable
Function prototype	void rtc_alarm_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable RTC alarm
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RTC alarm */
rtc_alarm_enable();
```

rtc_alarm_disable

The description of `rtc_alarm_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-404. Function rtc_alarm_disable

Function name	rtc_alarm_disable
----------------------	-------------------

Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_alarm_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable RTC alarm
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
ErrStatus error_status;

/* disable RTC alarm */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_alarm_disable ( );
```

rtc_timestamp_enable

The description of `rtc_timestamp_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-405. Function `rtc_timestamp_enable`

Function name	rtc_timestamp_enable
Function prototype	void rtc_timestamp_enable(uint32_t edge);
Function descriptions	enable RTC time-stamp
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
edge	specify which edge to detect of time-stamp
<i>RTC_TIMESTAMP_RISING_EDGE</i>	rising edge is valid event edge for timestamp event
<i>RTC_TIMESTAMP_FALLING_EDGE</i>	falling edge is valid event edge for timestamp event
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RTC time-stamp */

rtc_timestamp_enable (RTC_TIMESTAMP_RISING_EDGE);
```

rtc_timestamp_disable

The description of `rtc_timestamp_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-406. Function rtc_timestamp_disable

Function name	rtc_timestamp_disable
Function prototype	void rtc_timestamp_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable RTC time-stamp
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC time-stamp */

rtc_timestamp_disable ( );
```

rtc_timestamp_get

The description of rtc_timestamp_get is shown as below:

Table 3-407. Function rtc_timestamp_get

Function name	rtc_timestamp_get
Function prototype	void rtc_timestamp_get(rtc_timestamp_struct* rtc_timestamp);
Function descriptions	get RTC timestamp time and date
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
rtc_timestamp	Pointer to a rtc_timestamp_struct structure which contains parameters for RTC time-stamp configuration, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-391. Structure rtc_tamper_struct
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
rtc_timestamp_struct rtc_timestamp;

/* get RTC timestamp time and date */

rtc_timestamp_get (& rtc_timestamp);
```

rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get

The description of rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get is shown as below:

Table 3-408. Function rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get

Function name	rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get(void);
Function descriptions	get RTC time-stamp subsecond
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	RTC time-stamp subsecond value

Example:

```
uint32_t subsecond;
/* get RTC time-stamp subsecond */
uint32_t subsecond = rtc_timestamp_subsecond_get ( );
```

rtc_tamper_enable

The description of rtc_tamper_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-409. Function rtc_tamper_enable

Function name	rtc_tamper_enable
Function prototype	void rtc_tamper_enable(rtc_tamper_struct* rtc_tamper);
Function descriptions	enable RTC tamper
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
rtc_tamper	pointer to a rtc_tamper_struct structure which contains parameters for RTC tamper configuration, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-391. Structure rtc_tamper_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
rtc_tamper_struct rtc_tamper
/* enable RTC tamper */
rtc_tamper_enable (& rtc_tamper);
```

rtc_tamper_disable

The description of rtc_tamper_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-410. Function rtc_tamper_disable

Function name	rtc_tamper_disable
Function prototype	void rtc_tamper_disable(uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	disable RTC tamper
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
source	specify which tamper source to be disabled
<i>RTC_TAMPER0</i>	RTC tamper0
<i>RTC_TAMPER1</i>	RTC tamper1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC tamper */

rtc_tamper_disable (RTC_TAMPER0);
```

rtc_interrupt_enable

The description of rtc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-411. Function rtc_interrupt_enable

Function name	rtc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void rtc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable specified RTC interrupt
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify which interrupt source to be enabled
<i>RTC_INT_TIMESTAMP</i>	timestamp interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_TAMP</i>	tamp interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable specified RTC interrupt */

rtc_interrupt_enable (RTC_INT_TAMP);
```

rtc_interrupt_disable

The description of `rtc_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-412. Function `rtc_interrupt_disable`

Function name	rtc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	<code>void rtc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	disable specified RTC interrupt
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify which RTC interrupt to disable
<i>RTC_INT_TIMESTAMP</i>	second interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_TAMP</i>	tamp interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable specified RTC interrupt */

rtc_interrupt_disable (RTC_INT_TAMP);
```

rtc_flag_get

The description of `rtc_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-413. Function `rtc_flag_get`

Function name	rtc_flag_get
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus rtc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	check specified flag
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag to check
<i>RTC_FLAG_RECALIBRATION</i>	recalibration pending flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TAMP1</i>	tamper 1 event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TAMPO</i>	tamper 0 event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TIMESTAMPOVERFLOW</i>	time-stamp overflow event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TIMESTAMP</i>	time-stamp event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_ALARM0</i>	alarm event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_INIT</i>	init mode event flag

<i>RTC_FLAG_RSYN</i>	time and date registers synchronized event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_YCM</i>	year parameter configured event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_SHIFT</i>	shift operation pending flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_ALARM0_WRTTEN</i>	alarm written available flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* check time-stamp event flag */
FlagStatus = rtc_flag_get (RTC_FLAG_TIMESTAMP);
```

rtc_flag_clear

The description of **rtc_flag_clear** is shown as below:

Table 3-414. Function `rtc_flag_clear`

Function name	rtc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void rtc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear specified flag
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which flag to clear
<i>RTC_FLAG_TAMP1</i>	tamper 1 event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TAMP0</i>	tamper 0 event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TIMESTAMP_OVERFLOW</i>	time-stamp overflow event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_TIMESTAMP_MP</i>	time-stamp event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_ALARM0</i>	alarm event flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_RSYN</i>	time and date registers synchronized event flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear time-stamp event flag */
rtc_flag_clear (RTC_FLAG_TIMESTAMP);
```

rtc_alter_output_config

The description of rtc_alter_output_config is shown as below:

Table 3-415. Function rtc_alter_output_config

Function name	rtc_alter_output_config
Function prototype	void rtc_alter_output_config(uint32_t source, uint32_t mode);
Function descriptions	configure rtc alternate output source
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
source	specify signal to output
<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_5</i> 12HZ	when the LSE frequency is 32768Hz and the RTC_PSC is the default value, output 512Hz signal
<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_1</i> HZ	when the LSE frequency is 32768Hz and the RTC_PSC is the default value, output 1Hz signal
<i>RTC_ALARM_HIGH</i>	when the alarm flag is set, the output pin is high
<i>RTC_ALARM_LOW</i>	when the Alarm flag is set, the output pin is low
Input parameter{in}	
mode	specify the output pin (PC13) mode when output alarm signal
<i>RTC_ALARM_OUTPUT_OD</i>	open drain mode
<i>RTC_ALARM_OUTPUT_PP</i>	push pull mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure rtc alternate output source */

rtc_alter_output_config (RTC_ALARM_LOW, RTC_ALARM_OUTPUT_PP);
```

rtc_calibration_config

The description of rtc_calibration_config is shown as below:

Table 3-416. Function rtc_calibration_config

Function name	rtc_calibration_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_calibration_config(uint32_t window, uint32_t plus, uint32_t minus);
Function descriptions	configure RTC calibration register
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
window	select calibration window

<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_WINDOW_32S</i>	2exp20 RTCCLK cycles, 32s if RTCCLK = 32768 Hz
<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_WINDOW_16S</i>	2exp19 RTCCLK cycles, 16s if RTCCLK = 32768 Hz
<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_WINDOW_8S</i>	2exp18 RTCCLK cycles, 8s if RTCCLK = 32768 Hz
Input parameter{in}	
plus	add RTC clock or not
<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_P_LUS_SET</i>	add one RTC clock every 2048 rtc clock
<i>RTC_CALIBRATION_P_LUS_RESET</i>	no effect
Input parameter{in}	
minus	the RTC clock to minus during the calibration window(0x0 - 0x1FF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
ErrStatus error_status;

/* configure RTC calibration register */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_calibration_config(RTC_CALIBRATION_WINDOW_32S,
RTC_CALIBRATION_PLUS_SET, 0x1FF);
```

rtc_hour_adjust

The description of `rtc_hour_adjust` is shown as below:

Table 3-417. Function `rtc_hour_adjust`

Function name	rtc_hour_adjust
Function prototype	void rtc_hour_adjust(uint32_t operation);
Function descriptions	adjust the daylight saving time by adding or subtracting one hour from the current time
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
operation	hour adjustment operation
<i>RTC_CTL_A1H</i>	add one hour
<i>RTC_CTL_S1H</i>	subtract one hour
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* adjust the daylight saving time by adding one hour from the current time */

rtc_hour_adjust (RTC_CTL_A1H);
```

rtc_second_adjust

The description of rtc_second_adjust is shown as below:

Table 3-418. Function rtc_second_adjust

Function name	rtc_second_adjust
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_second_adjust(uint32_t add, uint32_t minus);
Function descriptions	adjust RTC second or subsecond value of current time
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
add	add 1s to current time or not
<i>RTC_SHIFT_ADD1S_R</i> <i>ESET</i>	no effect
<i>RTC_SHIFT_ADD1S_S</i> <i>ET</i>	add 1s to current time
Input parameter{in}	
minus	number of subsecond to minus from current time(0x0 - 0x7FFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
ErrStatus error_status;

/* adjust RTC second or subsecond value of current time */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_second_adjust (RTC_SHIFT_ADD1S_SET, 0);
```

rtc_bypass_shadow_enable

The description of rtc_bypass_shadow_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-419. Function rtc_bypass_shadow_enable

Function name	rtc_bypass_shadow_enable
Function prototype	void rtc_bypass_shadow_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable RTC bypass shadow registers function
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-	-
Return value		
-	-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RTC bypass shadow registers function */

rtc_bypass_shadow_enable();
```

rtc_bypass_shadow_disable

The description of `rtc_bypass_shadow_disable` shown as below:

Table 3-420. Function `rtc_bypass_shadow_disable`

Function name	rtc_bypass_shadow_disable
Function prototype	void rtc_bypass_shadow_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable RTC bypass shadow registers function
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC bypass shadow registers function */

rtc_bypass_shadow_disable();
```

rtc_refclock_detection_enable

The description of `rtc_refclock_detection_enable` shown as below:

Table 3-421. Function `rtc_refclock_detection_enable`

Function name	rtc_refclock_detection_enable
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_refclock_detection_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable RTC reference clock detection function
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
ErrStatus error_status;

/* enable RTC reference clock detection function */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_refclock_detection_enable ( );
```

rtc_refclock_detection_disable

The description of rtc_refclock_detection_disable shown as below:

Table 3-422. Function rtc_refclock_detection_disable

Function name	rtc_refclock_detection_disable
Function prototype	ErrStatus rtc_refclock_detection_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable RTC reference clock detection function
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
ErrStatus error_status;

/* disable RTC reference clock detection function */

ErrStatus error_status = rtc_refclock_detection_disable ( );
```

3.19. SPI/I2S

The SPI/I2S module can communicate with external devices using the SPI protocol or the I2S audio protocol. The SPI/I2S registers are listed in chapter [3.19.1](#), the SPI/I2S firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.19.2](#).

3.19.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

SPI/I2S registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-423. SPI/I2S registers

Registers	Descriptions
SPI_CTL0	SPI control register 0
SPI_CTL1	SPI control register 1
SPI_STAT	SPI status register

Registers	Descriptions
SPI_DATA	SPI data register
SPI_CRCPOLY	SPI CRC polynomial register
SPI_RCRC	SPI receive CRC register
SPI_TCRC	SPI transmit CRC register
SPI_I2SCTL	SPI/I2S control register
SPI_I2SPSC	SPI/I2S clock prescaler register
SPI_QCTL	SPI quad mode control register

3.19.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

SPI/I2S firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-424. SPI/I2S firmware function

Function name	Function description
spi_i2s_deinit	reset SPI and I2S peripheral
spi_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of SPI struct with the default values
spi_init	initialize SPI peripheral parameter
spi_enable	enable SPI
spi_disable	disable SPI
i2s_init	initialize I2S peripheral parameter
i2s_psc_config	configure I2S peripheral prescaler
i2s_enable	enable I2S
i2s_disable	disable I2S
spi_nss_output_enable	enable SPI NSS output function
spi_nss_output_disable	disable SPI NSS output function
spi_nss_internal_high	SPI NSS pin high level in software mode
spi_nss_internal_low	SPI NSS pin low level in software mode
spi_dma_enable	enable SPI DMA function
spi_dma_disable	disable SPI DMA function
spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config	configure SPI/I2S data frame format
spi_bidirectional_transfer_config	configure SPI bidirectional transfer direction
spi_i2s_data_transmit	SPI transmit data
spi_i2s_data_receive	SPI receive data
spi_i2s_format_error_clear	clear SPI/I2S format error flag status
spi_crc_polynomial_set	set SPI CRC polynomial
spi_crc_polynomial_get	get SPI CRC polynomial
spi_crc_on	turn on SPI CRC function
spi_crc_off	turn off SPI CRC function
spi_crc_next	SPI next data is CRC value
spi_crc_get	get SPI CRC send value or receive value
spi_crc_error_clear	clear SPI CRC error flag status
spi_ti_mode_enable	enable SPI TI mode

Function name	Function description
spi_ti_mode_disable	disable SPI TI mode
spi_nssp_mode_enable	enable SPI NSS pulse mode
spi_nssp_mode_disable	disable SPI NSS pulse mode
spi_quad_enable	enable SPI quad wire mode
spi_quad_disable	disable SPI quad wire mode
spi_quad_write_enable	enable SPI quad wire mode write
spi_quad_read_enable	enable SPI quad wire mode read
spi_quad_io23_output_enable	enable SPI quad wire mode SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
spi_quad_io23_output_disable	disable SPI quad wire mode SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
spi_i2s_flag_get	get SPI and I2S flag status
spi_i2s_interrupt_enable	enable SPI and I2S interrupt
spi_i2s_interrupt_disable	disable SPI and I2S interrupt
spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get	get SPI and I2S interrupt status

Structure spi_parameter_struct

Table 3-425. Structure spi_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
device_mode	SPI master or slave (SPI_MASTER, SPI_SLAVE)
trans_mode	SPI transtype (SPI_TRANSMODE_FULLDUPLEX, SPI_TRANSMODE_RECEIVEONLY, SPI_TRANSMODE_BDRECEIVE, SPI_TRANSMODE_BDTRANSMIT)
frame_size	SPI frame size (SPI_FRAMESIZE_8BIT, SPI_FRAMESIZE_16BIT)
nss	SPI NSS control by hardware or software (SPI_NSS_SOFT, SPI_NSS_HARD)
endian	SPI big endian or little endian (SPI_ENDIAN_MSB, SPI_ENDIAN_LSB)
clock_polarity_phase	SPI clock phase and polarity (SPI_CK_PL_LOW_PH_1EDGE, SPI_CK_PL_HIGH_PH_1EDGE, SPI_CK_PL_LOW_PH_2EDGE, SPI_CK_PL_HIGH_PH_2EDGE)
prescale	SPI prescale factor (SPI_PSC_n (n=2,4,8,16,32,64,128,256))

spi_i2s_deinit

The description of spi_i2s_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-426. Function spi_i2s_deinit

Function name	spi_i2s_deinit
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_deinit(uint32_t spi_periph);

Function descriptions	Reset SPIx and I2Sx peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI/I2S peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset SPI0 */
spi_i2s_deinit(SPI0);
```

spi_struct_para_init

The description of spi_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-427. Function spi_struct_para_init

Function name	spi_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void spi_struct_para_init(spi_parameter_struct* spi_struct);
Function descriptions	Initialize the parameters of SPI struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_struct	SPI init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-425. Structure spi_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the parameters of SPI */
spi_parameter_struct spi_init_struct;
spi_struct_para_init(&spi_init_struct);
```

spi_init

The description of spi_init is shown as below:

Table 3-428. Function spi_init

Function name	spi_init
Function prototype	void spi_init(uint32_t spi_periph, spi_parameter_struct* spi_struct);
Function descriptions	Initialize SPIx peripheral parameter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
spi_struct	SPI parameter initialization stuct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-425. Structure spi_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize SPI0 */

spi_parameter_struct spi_init_struct;

spi_init_struct.trans_mode      = SPI_TRANSMODE_BDTRANSMIT;
spi_init_struct.device_mode    = SPI_MASTER;
spi_init_struct.frame_size     = SPI_FRAMESIZE_8BIT;
spi_init_struct.clock_polarity_phase = SPI_CK_PL_HIGH_PH_2EDGE;
spi_init_struct.nss            = SPI_NSS_SOFT;
spi_init_struct.prescale       = SPI_PSC_8;
spi_init_struct.endian         = SPI_ENDIAN_MSB;
spi_init(SPI0, &spi_init_struct);
```

spi_enable

The description of spi_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-429. Function spi_enable

Function name	spi_enable
Function prototype	void spi_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPIx
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 */
spi_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_disable

The description of **spi_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-430. Function spi_disable

Function name	spi_disable
Function prototype	void spi_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable SPIx
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 */
spi_disable(SPI0);
```

i2s_init

The description of **i2s_init** is shown as below:

Table 3-431. Function i2s_init

Function name	i2s_init
Function prototype	void i2s_init(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t standard, uint32_t ckpl);
Function descriptions	Initialize I2S0 peripheral parameter

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S0 peripheral
SPIx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
mode	I2S operation mode
I2S_MODE_SLAVE_TX	I2S slave transmit mode
I2S_MODE_SLAVE_RX	I2S slave receive mode
I2S_MODE_MASTER_TX	I2S master transmit mode
I2S_MODE_MASTER_RX	I2S master receive mode
Input parameter{in}	
standard	I2S standard
I2S_STD_PHILLIPS	I2S phillips standard
I2S_STD_MSB	I2S MSB standard
I2S_STD_LSB	I2S LSB standard
I2S_STD_PCM_SHORT	I2S PCM short standard
I2S_STD_PCM_LONG	I2S PCM long standard
Input parameter{in}	
ckpl	I2S idle state clock polarity
I2S_CKPL_LOW	I2S clock polarity low level
I2S_CKPL_HIGH	I2S clock polarity high level
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize I2S0 */
i2s_init(SPI0, I2S_MODE_MASTER_TX, I2S_STD_PHILLIPS, I2S_CKPL_LOW);
```

i2s_psc_config

The description of i2s_psc_config is shown as below:

Table 3-432. Function i2s_psc_config

Function name	i2s_psc_config
Function prototype	void i2s_psc_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t audiosample, uint32_t frameformat, uint32_t mckout);
Function descriptions	Configure I2S0 prescaler
Precondition	-

The called functions	rcu_clock_freq_get
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S0 peripheral
SPIx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
audiosample	I2S audio sample rate
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_8K</i>	audio sample rate is 8KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_11K</i>	audio sample rate is 11KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_16K</i>	audio sample rate is 16KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_22K</i>	audio sample rate is 22KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_32K</i>	audio sample rate is 32KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_44K</i>	audio sample rate is 44KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_48K</i>	audio sample rate is 48KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_96K</i>	audio sample rate is 96KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_192K</i>	audio sample rate is 192KHz
Input parameter{in}	
frameformat	I2S data length and channel length
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH16B</i>	I2S data length is 16 bit and channel length is 16 bit
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH32B</i>	I2S data length is 16 bit and channel length is 32 bit
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT24B_CH32B</i>	I2S data length is 24 bit and channel length is 32 bit
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT32B_CH32B</i>	I2S data length is 32 bit and channel length is 32 bit
Input parameter{in}	
mckout	I2S master clock output
<i>I2S_MCKOUT_ENABL_E</i>	I2S master clock output enable
<i>I2S_MCKOUT_DISABLE_E</i>	I2S master clock output disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* configure I2S0 prescaler */

i2s_psc_config(SPI0, I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_44K, I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH16B,
I2S_MCKOUT_DISABLE);
```

i2s_enable

The description of i2s_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-433. Function i2s_enable

Function name	i2s_enable
Function prototype	void i2s_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable I2S0
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S0 peripheral
SPIx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2S0*/

i2s_enable(SPI0);
```

i2s_disable

The description of i2s_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-434. Function i2s_disable

Function name	i2s_disable
Function prototype	void i2s_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable I2S0
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S0 peripheral
SPIx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2S0*/
i2s_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_output_enable

The description of spi_nss_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-435. Function spi_nss_output_enable

Function name	spi_nss_output_enable
Function prototype	void spi_nss_output_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPIx NSS output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPIx peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 NSS output */
spi_nss_output_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_output_disable

The description of spi_nss_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-436. Function spi_nss_output_disable

Function name	spi_nss_output_disable
Function prototype	void spi_nss_output_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable SPIx NSS output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPIx peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 NSS output */
spi_nss_output_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_internal_high

The description of spi_nss_internal_high is shown as below:

Table 3-437. Function spi_nss_internal_high

Function name	spi_nss_internal_high
Function prototype	void spi_nss_internal_high(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI NSS pin high level in software mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 NSS pin is pulled high level in software mode */
spi_nss_internal_high(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_internal_low

The description of spi_nss_internal_low is shown as below:

Table 3-438. Function spi_nss_internal_low

Function name	spi_nss_internal_low
Function prototype	void spi_nss_internal_low(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI NSS pin low level in software mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 NSS pin is pulled low level in software mode */
spi_nss_internal_low(SPI0);
```

spi_dma_enable

The description of spi_dma_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-439. Function spi_dma_enable

Function name	spi_dma_enable
Function prototype	void spi_dma_enable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t dma);
Function descriptions	Enable SPIx DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
dma	SPI DMA mode
SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT	SPI transmit data use DMA
SPI_DMA_RECEIVE	SPI receive data use DMA
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 transmit data DMA function */
spi_dma_enable(SPI0, SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT);
```

spi_dma_disable

The description of spi_dma_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-440. Function spi_dma_disable

Function name	spi_dma_disable
Function prototype	void spi_dma_disable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t dma);
Function descriptions	Disable SPIx DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
dma	SPI DMA mode
<i>SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT</i>	SPI transmit data use DMA
<i>SPI_DMA_RECEIVE</i>	SPI receive data use DMA
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 transmit data DMA function */
spi_dma_disable(SPI0, SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT);
```

spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config

The description of spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config is shown as below:

Table 3-441. Function spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config

Function name	spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t frame_format);
Function descriptions	Configure SPIx/I2S0 data frame format
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
frame_format	SPI frame size
<i>SPI_FRAMESIZE_8BIT</i>	SPI frame size is 8 bits
<i>SPI_FRAMESIZE_16BIT</i>	SPI frame size is 16 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure SPI0/I2S0 data frame format size is 16 bits */
spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config(SPI0, SPI_FRAMESIZE_16BIT);
```

spi_bidirectional_transfer_config

The description of spi_bidirectional_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-442. Function spi_bidirectional_transfer_config

Function name	spi_bidirectional_transfer_config
Function prototype	void spi_bidirectional_transfer_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t transfer_direction);
Function descriptions	Configure SPIx bidirectional transfer direction
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
transfer_direction	SPI transfer direction
SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_TRANSMIT	SPI work in transmit-only mode
SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_RECEIVE	SPI work in receive-only mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 works in transmit-only mode */
spi_bidirectional_transfer_config(SPI0, SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_TRANSMIT);
```

spi_i2s_data_transmit

The description of spi_i2s_data_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-443. Function spi_i2s_data_transmit

Function name	spi_i2s_data_transmit
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_data_transmit(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	SPI transmit data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
data	16-bit data

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 transmit data */

spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n]);
```

spi_i2s_data_receive

The description of spi_i2s_data_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-444. Function spi_i2s_data_receive

Function name	spi_i2s_data_receive
Function prototype	uint16_t spi_i2s_data_receive(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI receive data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	16-bit data

Example:

```
/* SPI0 receive data */

spi0_receive_array[receive_n] = spi_i2s_data_receive(SPI0);
```

spi_i2s_format_error_clear

The description of spi_i2s_format_error_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-445. Function spi_i2s_format_error_clear

Function name	spi_i2s_format_error_clear
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_format_error_clear(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear SPI/I2S format error flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1

Input parameter{in}	
flag	SPI/I2S frame format error flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_FERR</i>	only for SPI work in TI mode
<i>I2S_FLAG_FERR</i>	for I2S
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear SPI0 format error flag status */

spi_i2s_format_error_clear(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_FERR);
```

spi_crc_polynomial_set

The description of **spi_crc_polynomial_set** is shown as below:

Table 3-446. Function spi_crc_polynomial_set

Function name	spi_crc_polynomial_set
Function prototype	void spi_crc_polynomial_set(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t crc_poly);
Function descriptions	Set SPI CRC polynomial
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
crc_poly	CRC polynomial value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set SPI0 CRC polynomial */

spi_crc_polynomial_set(SPI0, CRC_VALUE);
```

spi_crc_polynomial_get

The description of **spi_crc_polynomial_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-447. Function spi_crc_polynomial_get

Function name	spi_crc_polynomial_get
Function prototype	uint16_t spi_crc_polynomial_get(uint32_t spi_periph);

Function descriptions	Get SPI CRC polynomial
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	16 bit CRC polynomial value

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 CRC polynomial */

uint16_t crc_val;

crc_val = spi_crc_polynomial_get(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_on

The description of spi_crc_on is shown as below:

Table 3-448. Function spi_crc_on

Function name	spi_crc_on
Function prototype	void spi_crc_on(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Turn on CRC function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn on SPI0 CRC function */

spi_crc_on(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_off

The description of spi_crc_off is shown as below:

Table 3-449. Function spi_crc_off

Function name	spi_crc_off
Function prototype	void spi_crc_off(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Turn off CRC function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn off SPI0 CRC function */

spi_crc_off(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_next

The description of spi_crc_next is shown as below:

Table 3-450. Function spi_crc_next

Function name	spi_crc_next
Function prototype	void spi_crc_next(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI next data is CRC value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 next data is CRC value */

spi_crc_next(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_get

The description of spi_crc_get is shown as below:

Table 3-451. Function spi_crc_get

Function name	spi_crc_get
Function prototype	uint16_t spi_crc_get(uint32_t spi_periph,uint8_t crc);
Function descriptions	Get SPI CRC send value or receive value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
crc	SPI crc value
SPI_CRC_TX	get transmit crc value
SPI_CRC_RX	get receive crc value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	16-bit CRC value

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 CRC send value */

uint16_t crc_val;

crc_val = spi_crc_get(SPI0,SPI_CRC_TX);
```

spi_crc_error_clear

The description of spi_crc_error_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-452. Function spi_crc_error_clear

Function name	spi_crc_error_clear
Function prototype	void spi_crc_error_clear(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Clear SPI CRC error flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear SPI0 CRC error flag status */
```

```
spi_crc_error_clear(SPI0);
```

spi_ti_mode_enable

The description of spi_ti_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-453. Function spi_ti_mode_enable

Function name	spi_ti_mode_enable
Function prototype	void spi_ti_mode_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPI TI mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 TI mode */
spi_ti_mode_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_ti_mode_disable

The description of spi_ti_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-454. Function spi_ti_mode_disable

Function name	spi_ti_mode_disable
Function prototype	void spi_ti_mode_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable SPI TI mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 TI mode */
```

```
spi_ti_mode_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_nssp_mode_enable

The description of spi_nssp_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-455. Function spi_nssp_mode_enable

Function name	spi_ti_mode_enable
Function prototype	void spi_ti_mode_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPI NSS pulse mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 NSS pulse mode */
spi_nssp_mode_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_nssp_mode_disable

The description of spi_nssp_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-456. Function spi_nssp_mode_disable

Function name	spi_ti_mode_disable
Function prototype	void spi_ti_mode_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable SPI NSS pulse mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 NSS pulse mode */
```

```
spi_nssp_mode_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_quad_enable

The description of spi_quad_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-457. Function spi_quad_enable

Function name	spi_quad_enable
Function prototype	void spi_quad_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPI quad wire mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI1 quad wire mode */
spi_quad_enable(SPI1);
```

spi_quad_disable

The description of spi_quad_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-458. Function spi_quad_disable

Function name	spi_quad_disable
Function prototype	void spi_quad_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable SPI quad wire mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable SPI1 quad wire mode */
```

```
spi_quad_disable(SPI1);
```

spi_quad_write_enable

The description of spi_quad_write_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-459. Function spi_quad_write_enable

Function name	spi_quad_write_enable
Function prototype	void spi_quad_write_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPI quad wire mode write
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI1 quad wire write */
spi_quad_write_enable(SPI1);
```

spi_quad_read_enable

The description of spi_quad_read_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-460. Function spi_quad_read_enable

Function name	spi_quad_read_enable
Function prototype	void spi_quad_read_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable SPI quad wire mode read
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI1 quad wire read */
```

```
spi_quad_read_enable(SPI1);
```

spi_quad_io23_output_enable

The description of spi_quad_io23_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-461. Function spi_quad_io23_output_enable

Function name	spi_quad_io23_output_enable
Function prototype	void spi_quad_io23_output_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI quad wire mode SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI1 SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output */
spi_quad_io23_output_enable(SPI1);
```

spi_quad_io23_output_disable

The description of spi_quad_io23_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-462. Function spi_quad_io23_output_disable

Function name	spi_quad_io23_output_disable
Function prototype	void spi_quad_io23_output_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable SPI quad wire mode SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable SPI1 SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output */
```

```
spi_quad_io23_output_disable(SPI1);
```

spi_i2s_flag_get

The description of spi_i2s_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-463. Function spi_i2s_flag_get

Function name	spi_i2s_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus spi_i2s_flag_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	Get SPIx and I2S0 flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
flag	SPI/I2S flag status
SPI_FLAG_TBE	transmit buffer empty flag
SPI_FLAG_RBNE	receive buffer not empty flag
SPI_FLAG_TRANS	transmit on-going flag
SPI_FLAG_RXOVERR	receive overrun error flag
SPI_FLAG_CONFERR	mode config error flag
SPI_FLAG_CRCERR	CRC error flag
SPI_FLAG_FERR	SPI format error interrupt flag
I2S_FLAG_TBE	transmit buffer empty flag
I2S_FLAG_RBNE	receive buffer not empty flag
I2S_FLAG_TRANS	transmit on-going flag
I2S_FLAG_RXOVERR	overrun error flag
I2S_FLAG_TXURERR	underrun error flag
I2S_FLAG_CH	channel side flag
I2S_FLAG_FERR	I2S format error interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 transmit buffer empty flag status */

while(RESET == spi_i2s_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_TBE));

spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n++]);
```

spi_i2s_interrupt_enable

The description of spi_i2s_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-464. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_enable

Function name	spi_i2s_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_interrupt_enable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	Enable SPIx and I2S0 interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	SPI/I2S interrupt
SPI_I2SINT_TBE	transmit buffer empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_RBNE	receive buffer not empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_ERR	CRC error,configuration error,reception overrun error, transmission underrun error and format error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt */
spi_i2s_interrupt_enable(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_TBE);
```

spi_i2s_interrupt_disable

The description of spi_i2s_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-465. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_disable

Function name	spi_i2s_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_interrupt_disable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	Disable SPIx and I2S0 interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	SPI/I2S interrupt
SPI_I2SINT_TBE	transmit buffer empty interrupt

SPI_I2S_INT_RBNE	receive buffer not empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_ERR	CRC error,configuration error,reception overrun error, transmission underrun error and format error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```

/* disable SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt */

spi_i2s_interrupt_disable(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_TBE);

```

spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get

The description of spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-466. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	Get SPIx and I2S0 interrupt flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	SPI/I2S interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_TBE	transmit buffer empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RBN	receive buffer not empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RXERR	overrun interrupt
SPI_INT_FLAG_CONFERR	config error interrupt
SPI_INT_FLAG_CRCERR	CRC error interrupt
I2S_INT_FLAG_TXUR	underrun error interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_FERR	format error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt status */

If(RESET != spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_TBE)){

    while(RESET == spi_i2s_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_TBE));

    spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n++]);

}

```

3.20. SYSCFG

The SYSCFG registers are listed in chapter [3.20.1](#), the SYSCFG firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.20.2](#).

3.20.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

SYSCFG registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-467. SYSCFG Registers

Registers	Descriptions
SYSCFG_CFG0	system configuration register 0
SYSCFG EXTISS0	EXTI sources selection register 0
SYSCFG EXTISS1	EXTI sources selection register 1
SYSCFG EXTISS2	EXTI sources selection register 2
SYSCFG EXTISS3	EXTI sources selection register 3
SYSCFG_CFG2	system configuration register 2
SYSCFG_CPSCTL	system I/O compensation control register

3.20.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

SYSCFG firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-468. SYSCFG firmware function

Function name	Function description
syscfg_deinit	deinit syscfg module
syscfg_dma_remap_enable	enable the DMA channels remapping
syscfg_dma_remap_disable	disable the DMA channels remapping
syscfg_high_current_enable	enable PB9 high current capability
syscfg_high_current_disable	disable PB9 high current capability
syscfg_exti_line_config	configure the GPIO pin as EXTI Line

Function name	Function description
syscfg_lock_config	connect TIMER0/14/15/16 break input to the selected parameter
syscfg_flag_get	check if the specified flag in SYSCFG_CFG2 is set or not
syscfg_flag_clear	clear the flag in SYSCFG_CFG2 by writing 1
syscfg_compensation_config	configure the I/O compensation cell
syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get	check if the I/O compensation cell ready flag is set or not

syscfg_deinit

The description of syscfg_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-469. Function syscfg_deinit

Function name	syscfg_deinit
Function prototype	void syscfg_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset the SYSCFG registers
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset SYSCFG registers */
syscfg_deinit();
```

syscfg_dma_remap_enable

The description of syscfg_dma_remap_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-470. Function syscfg_dma_remap_enable

Function name	syscfg_dma_remap_enable
Function prototype	void syscfg_dma_remap_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable the DMA channels remapping
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
syscfg_dma_remap	specify the DMA channels to remap
SYSCFG_DMA_REMA_P_TIMER16	remap TIMER16 channel0 and UP DMA requests to channel1(default channel0)
SYSCFG_DMA_REMA	remap TIMER15 channel2 and UP DMA requests to channel3(default

<i>P_TIMER15</i>	channel2)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_USART0RX</i>	remap USART0 Rx DMA request to channel4(default channel2)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_USART0TX</i>	remap USART0 Tx DMA request to channel3(default channel1)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_ADC</i>	remap ADC DMA requests from channel0 to channel1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA channel remap*/
syscfg_dma_remap_enable(SYSCFG_DMA_REMAP_TIMER16);
```

syscfg_dma_remap_disable

The description of `syscfg_dma_remap_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-471. Function `syscfg_dma_remap_disable`

Function name	syscfg_dma_remap_disable
Function prototype	void syscfg_dma_remap_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable the DMA channels remapping
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>syscfg_dma_remap</i>	specify the DMA channels to remap
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_TIMER16</i>	remap TIMER16 channel0 and UP DMA requests to channel1(default channel0)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_TIMER15</i>	remap TIMER15 channel2 and UP DMA requests to channel3(default channel2)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_USART0RX</i>	remap USART0 Rx DMA request to channel4(default channel2)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_USART0TX</i>	remap USART0 Tx DMA request to channel3(default channel1)
<i>SYSCFG_DMA_REMA</i> <i>P_ADC</i>	remap ADC DMA requests from channel0 to channel1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* disable DMA channel remap*/
syscfg_dma_remap_disable(SYSCFG_DMA_REMAP_TIMER16);

```

syscfg_high_current_enable

The description of syscfg_high_current_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-472. Function syscfg_high_current_enable

Function name	syscfg_high_current_enable
Function prototype	void syscfg_high_current_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable PB9 high current capability
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable PB9 high current capability */
syscfg_high_current_enable();

```

syscfg_high_current_disable

The description of syscfg_high_current_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-473. Function syscfg_high_current_disable

Function name	syscfg_high_current_disable
Function prototype	void syscfg_high_current_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable PB9 high current capability
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* disable PB9 high current capability */

```

```
syscfg_high_current_disable();
```

syscfg_exti_line_config

The description of syscfg_exti_line_config is shown as below:

Table 3-474. Function syscfg_exti_line_config

Function name	syscfg_exti_line_config
Function prototype	void syscfg_exti_line_config(uint8_t exti_port, uint8_t exti_pin);
Function descriptions	configure the GPIO pin as EXTI Line
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exti_port	specify the GPIO port used in EXTI
<i>EXTI_SOURCE_GPIOx</i>	x=A,B,C,D,F
exti_pin	specify the EXTI line
<i>EXTI_SOURCE_PINx</i>	x=0..15(GPIOA, GPIOB, GPIOC, GPIOD, GPIOF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the GPIO pin as EXTI Line */
syscfg_exti_line_config(EXTI_SOURCE_GPIOA, EXTI_SOURCE_PIN0);
```

syscfg_lock_config

The description of syscfg_lock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-475. Function syscfg_lock_config

Function name	syscfg_lock_config
Function prototype	void syscfg_lock_config (uint32_t syscfg_lock);
Function descriptions	connect TIMER0/14/15/16 break input to the selected parameter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
syscfg_lock	specify the parameter to be connected
<i>SYSCFG_LOCK_LOCK_UP</i>	Cortex-M4 lockup output connected to the break input
<i>SYSCFG_LOCK_SRA_M_PARITY_ERROR</i>	SRAM_PARITY check error connected to the break input
<i>SYSCFG_LOCK_LVD</i>	LVD interrupt connected to the break input
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure syscfg lock*/
syscfg_lock_config(SYSCFG_LOCK_LOCKUP);
```

syscfg_flag_get

The description of syscfg_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-476. Function syscfg_flag_get

Function name	syscfg_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus syscfg_flag_get(uint32_t syscfg_flag);
Function descriptions	check if the specified flag in SYSCFG_CFG2 is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
syscfg_flag	specify the flag in SYSCFG_CFG2 to check
SYSCFG_SRAM_PCE F	SRAM parity check error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get syscfg flag */
FlagStatus status;
status = syscfg_flag_get(SYSCFG_SRAM_PCEF);
```

syscfg_flag_clear

The description of syscfg_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-477. Function syscfg_flag_clear

Function name	syscfg_flag_clear
Function prototype	void syscfg_flag_clear (uint32_t syscfg_flag);
Function descriptions	clear the flag in SYSCFG_CFG2 by writing 1
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

syscfg_flag	specify the flag in SYSCFG_CFG2 to check
SYSCFG_SRAM_PCE_F	SRAM parity check error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear syscfg flag */
syscfg_flag_clear(SYSCFG_SRAM_PCEF);
```

syscfg_compensation_config

The description of syscfg_compensation_config is shown as below:

Table 3-478. Function syscfg_compensation_config

Function name	syscfg_compensation_config
Function prototype	void syscfg_compensation_config(uint32_t syscfg_compensation);
Function descriptions	configure the I/O compensation cell
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
syscfg_compensation	specifies the I/O compensation cell mode
SYSCFG_COMPENSATION_ENABLE	I/O compensation cell is enabled
SYSCFG_COMPENSATION_DISABLE	I/O compensation cell is disabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the I/O compensation cell */
syscfg_compensation_config(SYSCFG_COMPENSATION_ENABLE);
```

syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get

The description of syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-479. Function syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get

Function name	syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get(void);

Function descriptions	check if the I/O compensation cell ready flag is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear syscfg flag */
FlagStatus ready_flag;
ready_flag = syscfg_cps_rdy_flag_get();
```

3.21. TIMER

The timers have a 16-bit counter that can be used as an unsigned counter and supports both input capture and output compare. Timers (TIMERx) are divided into five sorts: advanced timer (TIMER0), general level0 timer (TIMERx, x=1, 2), general level2 timer (TIMER13), general level2 timer (TIMERx, x=15, 16), Basic timer (TIMER5). The specific functions of different types of timer are different. The TIMER registers are listed in chapter [3.21.1](#), the TIMER firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.21.2](#).

3.21.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

TIMERx registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-480. TIMERx Registers

Registers	Descriptions
TIMER_CTL0(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Control register 0
TIMERx_CTL1(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Control register 1
TIMERx_SMCFG(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 14)	Slave mode configuration register
TIMERx_DMAINTEN(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	DMA and interrupt enable register
TIMERx_INTF(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Interrupt flag register
TIMERx_SWEVG(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Software event generation register

Registers	Descriptions
TIMERx_CHCTL0(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Channel control register 0
TIMERx_CHCTL1(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2)	Channel control register 1
TIMERx_CHCTL2(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Channel control register 2
TIMERx_CNT(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Counter register
TIMERx_PSC(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Prescaler register
TIMERx_CAR(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Counter auto reload register
TIMERx_CREP(TIMERx, x=0, 5, 14, 15, 16)	Counter repetition register
TIMERx_CH0CV(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Channel 0 capture/compare value register
TIMERx_CH1CV(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 14)	Channel 1 capture/compare value register
TIMERx_CH2CV(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2)	Channel 2 capture/compare value register
TIMERx_CH3CV(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2)	Channel 3 capture/compare value register
TIMERx_IRMP(TIMERx, x=13)	Channel complementary protection register
TIMERx_CCHP(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 14, 15, 16)	TIMER complementary channel protection register
TIMERx_DMACFG(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 14, 15, 16)	DMA configuration register
TIMERx_DMATB(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 14, 15, 16)	DMA transfer buffer register
TIMERx_CFG(TIMERx, x=0, 1, 2, 13, 14, 15, 16)	Configuration register

3.21.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

The description format of firmware functions are shown as below:

Table 3-481. TIMERx firmware function

Function name	Function description
timer_deinit	deinit a timer
timer_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER init parameter struct with the default values
timer_init	initialize TIMER counter
timer_enable	enable a timer
timer_disable	disable a timer
timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable	enable the auto reload shadow function
timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable	disable the auto reload shadow function
timer_update_event_enable	enable the update event
timer_update_event_disable	disable the update event

Function name	Function description
timer_counter_alignment	set TIMER counter alignment mode
timer_counter_up_direction	set TIMER counter up direction
timer_counter_down_direction	set TIMER counter down direction
timer_prescaler_config	configure TIMER prescaler
timer_repetition_value_config	configure TIMER repetition register value
timer_autoreload_value_config	configure TIMER autoreload register value
timer_counter_value_config	configure TIMER counter register value
timer_counter_read	read TIMER counter value
timer_prescaler_read	read TIMER prescaler value
timer_single_pulse_mode_config	configure TIMER single pulse mode
timer_update_source_config	configure TIMER update source
timer_ocpre_clear_source_config	configure TIMER OCPRE clear source selection
timer_flag_get	get TIMER flags
timer_flag_clear	clear TIMER flags
timer_interrupt_enable	enable the TIMER interrupt
timer_interrupt_disable	disable the TIMER interrupt
timer_interrupt_flag_get	get timer interrupt flag
timer_interrupt_flag_clear	clear TIMER interrupt flag
timer_dma_enable	enable the TIMER DMA
timer_dma_disable	disable the TIMER DMA
timer_channel_dma_request_source_select	channel DMA request source selection
timer_dma_transfer_config	configure the TIMER DMA transfer
timer_event_software_generate	software generate events
timer_break_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER break parameter struct with the default values
timer_break_config	configure TIMER break function
timer_break_enable	enable TIMER break function
timer_break_disable	disable TIMER break function
timer_automatic_output_enable	enable TIMER output automatic function
timer_automatic_output_disable	disable TIMER output automatic function
timer_primary_output_config	configure TIMER primary output function
timer_channel_control_shadow_config	channel capture/compare control shadow register enable
timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config	configure TIMER channel control shadow register update control
timer_channel_output_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel output parameter struct with the default values
timer_channel_output_config	configure TIMER channel output function
timer_channel_output_mode_config	configure TIMER channel output compare mode
timer_channel_output_pulse_	configure TIMER channel output pulse value

Function name	Function description
value_config	
timer_channel_output_shadow_config	configure TIMER channel output shadow function
timer_channel_output_fast_config	configure TIMER channel output fast function
timer_channel_output_clear_config	configure TIMER channel output clear function
timer_channel_output_polarity_config	configure TIMER channel output polarity
timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config	configure TIMER channel complementary output polarity
timer_channel_output_state_config	configure TIMER channel enable state
timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config	configure TIMER channel complementary output enable state
timer_channel_input_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel input parameter struct with the default values
timer_input_capture_config	configure TIMER input capture parameter
timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config	configure TIMER channel input capture prescaler value
timer_channel_capture_value_register_read	read TIMER channel capture compare register value
timer_input_pwm_capture_config	configure TIMER input pwm capture function
timer_hall_mode_config	configure TIMER hall sensor mode
timer_input_trigger_source_select	select TIMER input trigger source
timer_master_output_trigger_source_select	select TIMER master mode output trigger source
timer_slave_mode_select	select TIMER slave mode
timer_master_slave_mode_config	configure TIMER master slave mode
timer_external_trigger_config	configure TIMER external trigger input
timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config	configure TIMER quadrature decoder mode
timer_internal_clock_config	configure TIMER internal clock mode
timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config	configure TIMER the internal trigger as external clock input
timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config	configure TIMER the external trigger as external clock input
timer_external_clock_mode0_config	configure TIMER the external clock mode 0
timer_external_clock_mode1_config	configure TIMER the external clock mode 1
timer_external_clock_mode1_disable	disable TIMER the external clock mode 1
timer_channel_remap_config	configure TIMER channel remap function
timer_write_chxval_register_config	configure TIMER write CHxVAL register selection
timer_output_value_selection_config	configure TIMER output value selection

Structure timer_parameter_struct

Table 3-482. Structure timer_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
prescaler	prescaler value (0~65535)
alignedmode	aligned mode (TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_DOWN, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_UP, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_BOTH)
counterdirection	counter direction (TIMER_COUNTER_UP, TIMER_COUNTER_DOWN)
period	period value (0~65535)
clockdivision	clock division value (TIMER_CKDIV_DIV1, TIMER_CKDIV_DIV2, TIMER_CKDIV_DIV4)
repetitioncounter	the counter repetition value (0~255)

Structure timer_break_parameter_struct

Table 3-483. Structure timer_break_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
runoffstate	run mode off-state (TIMER_ROS_STATE_ENABLE, TIMER_ROS_STATE_DISABLE)
ideloffstate	idle mode off-state (TIMER_IOS_STATE_ENABLE, TIMER_IOS_STATE_DISABLE)
deadtime	dead time (0~255)
breakpolarity	break polarity (TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_LOW, TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_HIGH)
outputautostate	output automatic enable (TIMER_OUTAUTO_ENABLE, TIMER_OUTAUTO_DISABLE)
protectmode	complementary register protect control (TIMER_CCHP_PROT_OFF, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_0, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_1, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_2)
breakstate	break enable (TIMER_BREAK_ENABLE, TIMER_BREAK_DISABLE)

Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct

Table 3-484. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
outputstate	channel output state (TIMER_CCX_ENABLE, TIMER_CCX_DISABLE)
outputnstate	channel complementary output state (TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE, TIMER_CCXN_DISABLE)
ocpolarity	channel output polarity (TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH, TIMER_OC_POLARITY_LOW)
ocnpolarity	channel complementary output polarity (TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH, TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_LOW)
ocidlestate	idle state of channel output (TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_LOW, TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_HIGH)

Member name	Function description
ocnidlestate	idle state of channel complementary output (TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_LOW, TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_HIGH)

Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct

Table 3-485. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
icpolarity	channel input polarity (TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_BOTH_EDGE)
icselection	channel input mode selection (TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI, TIMER_IC_SELECTION_INDIRECTTI, TIMER_IC_SELECTION_ITS)
icprescaler	channel input capture prescaler (TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV4, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV8)
icfilter	channel input capture filter control (0~15)

timer_deinit

The description of timer_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-486. Function timer_deinit

Function name	timer_deinit
Function prototype	void timer_deinit(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	deinit a TIMER
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset TIMER0 */
timer_deinit (TIMER0);
```

timer_struct_para_init

The description of timer_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-487. Function timer_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_struct_para_init

Function prototype	void timer_struct_para_init(timer_parameter_struct* initpara);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER init parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
initpara	TIMER init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-482. Structure timer_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER init parameter struct with a default value */

timer_parameter_struct timer_initpara;

timer_struct_para_init(timer_initpara);
```

timer_init

The description of timer_init is shown as below:

Table 3-488. Function timer_init

Function name	timer_init
Function prototype	void timer_init(uint32_t timer_periph, timer_parameter_struct* initpara);
Function descriptions	initialize TIMER counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
initpara	TIMER init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-482. Structure timer_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER0 */
```

```

timer_parameter_struct timer_initpara;

timer_initpara.prescaler      = 107;
timer_initpara.alignedmode    = TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE;
timer_initpara.counterdirection = TIMER_COUNTER_UP;
timer_initpara.period         = 999;
timer_initpara.clockdivision  = TIMER_CKDIV_DIV1;
timer_initpara.repetitioncounter = 1;
timer_init(TIMER0,&timer_initpara);

```

timer_enable

The description of timer_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-489. Function timer_enable

Function name	timer_enable
Function prototype	void timer_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable a timer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable TIMER0 */

timer_enable (TIMER0);

```

timer_disable

The description of timer_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-490. Function timer_disable

Function name	timer_disable
Function prototype	void timer_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable a timer
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 */
timer_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable

The description of timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-491. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable

Function name	timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable
Function prototype	void timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable the auto reload shadow function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 auto reload shadow function */
timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable

The description of timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-492. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable

Function name	timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable
Function prototype	void timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);

Function descriptions	disable the auto reload shadow function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 auto reload shadow function */

timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_update_event_enable

The description of timer_update_event_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-493. Function timer_update_event_enable

Function name	timer_update_event_enable
Function prototype	void timer_update_event_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable the update event
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 the update event */

timer_update_event_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_update_event_disable

The description of timer_update_event_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-494. Function timer_update_event_disable

Function name	timer_update_event_disable
Function prototype	void timer_update_event_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable the update event
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 the update event */

timer_update_event_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_counter_alignment

The description of timer_counter_alignment is shown as below:

Table 3-495. Function timer_counter_alignment

Function name	timer_counter_alignment
Function prototype	void timer_counter_alignment(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t aligned);
Function descriptions	set TIMER counter alignment mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
aligned	alignment mode
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_ED GE</i>	No center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode). The direction of the counter is specified by the DIR bit.
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_CE NTER_DOWN</i>	Center-aligned and counting down assert mode. The counter counts under center aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMERx_CHCTL0register). Only when the counter is counting down, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_CE NTER_UP</i>	Center-aligned and counting up assert mode. The counter counts under center aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMERx_CHCTL0register). Only when the counter is counting up, compare

	interrupt flag of channels can be set.
<i>TIMER_COUNTER_CE</i> <i>NTER_BOTH</i>	Center-aligned and counting up/down assert mode. The counter counts under center-aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMERx_CHCTL0 register). Both when the counter is counting up and counting down, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter center-aligned and counting up assert mode */
timer_counter_alignment (TIMER0, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_UP);
```

timer_counter_up_direction

The description of timer_counter_up_direction is shown as below:

Table 3-496. Function timer_counter_up_direction

Function name	timer_counter_up_direction
Function prototype	void timer_counter_up_direction(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	set TIMER counter up direction
Precondition	set TIMER counter no center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode)
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter up direction */
timer_counter_up_direction (TIMER0);
```

timer_counter_down_direction

The description of timer_counter_down_direction is shown as below:

Table 3-497. Function timer_counter_down_direction

Function name	timer_counter_down_direction
Function prototype	void timer_counter_down_direction(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	set TIMER counter down direction

Precondition	set TIMER counter no center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode)
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter down direction */
timer_counter_down_direction (TIMER0);
```

timer_prescaler_config

The description of timer_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-498. Function timer_prescaler_config

Function name	timer_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void timer_prescaler_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t prescaler, uint8_t pscreload);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER prescaler
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	prescaler value (0~65535)
Input parameter{in}	
pscreload	prescaler reload mode
TIMER_PSC_RELOAD _NOW	the prescaler is loaded right now
TIMER_PSC_RELOAD _UPDATE	the prescaler is loaded at the next update event
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 prescaler */

timer_prescaler_config (TIMER0, 3000, TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_NOW);

```

timer_repetition_value_config

The description of timer_repetition_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-499. Function timer_repetition_value_config

Function name	timer_repetition_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_repetition_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t repetition);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER repetition register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 15, 16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
repetition	the counter repetition value (0~255)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 repetition register value */

timer_repetition_value_config (TIMER0, 98);

```

timer_autoreload_value_config

The description of timer_autoreload_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-500. Function timer_autoreload_value_config

Function name	timer_autoreload_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_autoreload_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t autoreload);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER autoreload register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	

autoreload	the counter auto-reload value (0-65535)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER autoreload register value */

timer_autoreload_value_config (TIMER0, 3000);
```

timer_counter_value_config

The description of timer_counter_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-501. Function timer_counter_value_config

Function name	timer_counter_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_counter_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t counter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER counter register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
counter	the counter value (0-65535)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 counter register value */

timer_counter_value_config (TIMER0, 3000);
```

timer_counter_read

The description of timer_counter_read is shown as below:

Table 3-502. Function timer_counter_read

Function name	timer_counter_read
Function prototype	uint32_t timer_counter_read(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	read TIMER counter value
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	counter value (0~65535)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 counter value */

uint32_t i = 0;

i = timer_counter_read (TIMER0);
```

timer_prescaler_read

The description of **timer_prescaler_read** is shown as below:

Table 3-503. Function timer_prescaler_read

Function name	timer_prescaler_read
Function prototype	uint16_t timer_prescaler_read(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	read TIMER prescaler value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	prescaler register value (0~65535)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 prescaler value */

uint16_t i = 0;

i = timer_prescaler_read (TIMER0);
```

timer_single_pulse_mode_config

The description of **timer_single_pulse_mode_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-504. Function timer_single_pulse_mode_config

Function name	timer_single_pulse_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_single_pulse_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t spmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER single pulse mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
spmode	pulse mode
<i>TIMER_SP_MODE_SIN_GLE</i>	single pulse mode
<i>TIMER_SP_MODE_REPETITIVE</i>	repetitive pulse mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 single pulse mode */
timer_single_pulse_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_SP_MODE_SINGLE);
```

timer_update_source_config

The description of timer_update_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-505. Function timer_update_source_config

Function name	timer_update_source_config
Function prototype	void timer_update_source_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t update);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER update source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
update	update source
<i>TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_</i>	Any of the following events generate an update interrupt or DMA request:

GLOBAL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The UPG bit is set – The counter generates an overflow or underflow event – The slave mode controller generates an update event
TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_REGULAR	Only counter overflow/underflow generates an update interrupt or DMA request.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER update only by counter overflow/underflow */

timer_update_source_config (TIMER0, TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_REGULAR);
```

timer_ocpre_clear_source_config

The description of timer_ocpre_clear_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-506. Function t timer_ocpre_clear_source_config

Function name	timer_ocpre_clear_source_config
Function prototype	void timer_ocpre_clear_source_config (uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t ocpclear);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER OCPRE clear source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
ocpreclear	clear source
TIMER_OCPRE_CL_EAR_SOURCE_CL_R	OCPRE_CLR_INT is connected to the OCPRE_CLR input
TIMER_OCPRE_CL_EAR_SOURCE_ETI_F	OCPRE_CLR_INT is connected to ETIF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

例如:

```

/* configure TIMER0 OCPRE_CLR_INT is connected to the OCPRE_CLR input */

timer_ocpre_clear_source_config(TIMER0, TIMER_OCPRE_CLEAR_SOURCE_CLR);

```

timer_interrupt_enable

The description of timer_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-507. Function timer_interrupt_enable

Function name	timer_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void timer_interrupt_enable(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable the TIMER interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	timer interrupt enable source
TIMER_INT_UP	update interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..2, 5, 13..16)
TIMER_INT_CH0	channel 0 interrupt enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)
TIMER_INT_CH1	channel 1 interrupt enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_INT_CH2	channel 2 interrupt enable, TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_INT_CH3	channel 3 interrupt enable , TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_INT_CMT	commutation interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)
TIMER_INT_TRG	trigger interrupt enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_INT_BRK	break interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable the TIMER0 update interrupt */

timer_interrupt_enable (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_UP);

```

timer_interrupt_disable

The description of timer_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-508. Function timer_interrupt_disable

Function name	timer_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void timer_interrupt_disable (uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable the TIMER interrupt
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	timer interrupt disable source
TIMER_INT_UP	update interrupt disable, TIMERx (x=0..2, 5, 13..16)
TIMER_INT_CH0	channel 0 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)
TIMER_INT_CH1	channel 1 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_INT_CH2	channel 2 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_INT_CH3	channel 3 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_INT_CMT	commutation interrupt disable, TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)
TIMER_INT_TRG	trigger interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_INT_BRK	break interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 update interrupt */

timer_interrupt_disable (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_UP);
```

timer_interrupt_flag_get

The description of timer_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-509. Function timer_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	timer_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus timer_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	get timer interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the timer interrupt bits
TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP	update interrupt flag,TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH0	channel 0 interrupt flag,TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH1	channel 1 interrupt flag,TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH2	channel 2 interrupt flag,TIMERx TIMERx(x=0..2)

<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt flag,TIMERx TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CM_T</i>	channel commutation interrupt flag, TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_BRK</i>	break interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get TIMER0 update interrupt flag */

FlagStatus Flag_interrupt = RESET;

Flag_interrupt = timer_interrupt_flag_get (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP);

```

timer_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `timer_interrupt_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-510. Function `timer_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	<code>timer_interrupt_flag_clear</code>
Function prototype	<code>void timer_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	clear TIMER interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>timer_periph</code>	TIMER peripheral
<code>TIMERx</code>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
<code>interrupt</code>	the timer interrupt bits
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP</i>	update interrupt flag,TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt flag,TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt flag,TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt flag,TIMERx TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt flag,TIMERx TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CM_T</i>	channel commutation interrupt flag, TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_BRK</i>	break interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TIMER0 update interrupt flag */

timer_interrupt_flag_clear (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP);
```

timer_flag_get

The description of timer_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-511. Function timer_flag_get

Function name	timer_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus timer_flag_get(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get TIMER flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the timer interrupt flags
TIMER_FLAG_UP	update flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)
TIMER_FLAG_CH0	channel 0 flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)
TIMER_FLAG_CH1	channel 1 flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_FLAG_CH2	channel 2 flag, TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_FLAG_CH3	channel 3 flag, TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_FLAG_CMT	channel commutation flag, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
TIMER_FLAG_TRG	trigger flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_FLAG_BRK	break flag, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
TIMER_FLAG_CH0O	channel 0 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 3..16)
TIMER_FLAG_CH1O	channel 1 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
TIMER_FLAG_CH2O	channel 2 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..2)
TIMER_FLAG_CH3O	channel 3 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get TIMER0 update flags */

FlagStatus Flag_status = RESET;

Flag_status = timer_flag_get (TIMER0, TIMER_FLAG_UP);
```

timer_flag_clear

The description of timer_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-512. Function timer_flag_clear

Function name	timer_flag_clear
Function prototype	void timer_flag_clear(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear TIMER flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the timer interrupt flags
<i>TIMER_FLAG_UP</i>	update flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_BRK</i>	break flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0O</i>	channel 0 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1O</i>	channel 1 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2O</i>	channel 2 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3O</i>	channel 3 overcapture flag, <i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TIMER0 update flags */
timer_flag_clear (TIMER0, TIMER_FLAG_UP);
```

timer_dma_enable

The description of timer_dma_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-513. Function timer_dma_enable

Function name	timer_dma_enable
Function prototype	void timer_dma_enable(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t dma);
Function descriptions	enable the TIMER DMA

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
dma	timer DMA source enable
<i>TIMER_DMA_UPD</i>	update DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH0D</i>	channel 0 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH1D</i>	channel 1 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 4)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH2D</i>	channel 2 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH3D</i>	channel 3 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CMTD</i>	commutation DMA request enable, TIMERx(x=0, 14)
<i>TIMER_DMA_TRGD</i>	trigger DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 update DMA */

timer_dma_enable (TIMER0, TIMER_DMA_UPD);
```

timer_dma_disable

The description of timer_dma_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-514. Function timer_dma_disable

Function name	timer_dma_disable
Function prototype	void timer_dma_disable (uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t dma);
Function descriptions	disable the TIMER DMA
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
dma	timer DMA source disable
<i>TIMER_DMA_UPD</i>	update DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH0D</i>	channel 0 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH1D</i>	channel 1 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH2D</i>	channel 2 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH3D</i>	channel 3 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2)

<i>TIMER_DMA_CMTD</i>	commutation DMA request enable, TIMERx(x=0..14)
<i>TIMER_DMA_TRGD</i>	trigger DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* disable the TIMER0 update DMA */

timer_dma_disable (TIMER0, TIMER_DMA_UPD);

```

timer_channel_dma_request_source_select

The description of timer_channel_dma_request_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-515. Function timer_channel_dma_request_source_select

Function name	timer_channel_dma_request_source_select
Function prototype	void timer_channel_dma_request_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t dma_request);
Function descriptions	channel DMA request source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
dma_request	channel DMA request source selection
<i>TIMER_DMAREQUEST_CHANNELEVENT</i>	DMA request of channel n is sent when channel y event occurs
<i>TIMER_DMAREQUEST_UPDATEEVENT</i>	DMA request of channel n is sent when update event occurs
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* TIMER0 channel DMA request of channel n is sent when channel y event occurs */

timer_channel_dma_request_source_select(TIMER0,
TMR_DMAREQUEST_CHANNELEVENT);

```

timer_dma_transfer_config

The description of timer_dma_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-516. Function timer_dma_transfer_config

Function name	timer_dma_transfer_config
Function prototype	void timer_dma_transfer_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t dma_baseaddr, uint32_t dma_lenth);
Function descriptions	configure the TIMER DMA transfer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
dma_baseaddr	DMA transfer access start address
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CTL0</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CTL0, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CTL1</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CTL1, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_SMCFG</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_SMCFG, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_DMAINTEN</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_DMAINTEN, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_INTF</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_INTF, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_SWEVG</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_SWEVG, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CHCTL0</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CHCTL0, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CHCTL1</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CHCTL1, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CHCTL2</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CHCTL2, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CNT</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CNT, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_PSC</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_PSC, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CAR</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CAR, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CREP</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CREP, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_MACFG_DMA_TA_CH0CV</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CH0CV, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14..16)

<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CH1CV</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CH1CV, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CH2CV</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CH2CV, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CH3CV</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CH3CV, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CCHP</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CCHP, TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_DMACFG</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_DMACFG, TIMERx (x=0..2, 14..16)
Input parameter{in}	
dma_lenth	DMA transfer count
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TC_xTRANSFER</i>	x=1..18, DMA transfer x time
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the TIMER0 DMA transfer */

timer_dma_transfer_config(TIMER0, TIMER_DMACFG_DMATA_CTL0,
  TIMER_DMACFG_DMATC_5TRANSFER);
```

timer_event_software_generate

The description of timer_event_software_generate is shown as below:

Table 3-517. Function timer_event_software_generate

Function name	timer_event_software_generate
Function prototype	void timer_event_software_generate(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t event);
Function descriptions	software generate events
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
event	the timer software event generation sources
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_U PG</i>	update event, TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 13..16)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C</i>	channel 0 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)

<i>H0G</i>	
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C H1G</i>	channel 1 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C H2G</i>	channel 2 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C H3G</i>	channel 3 capture or compare event generation, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C MTG</i>	channel commutation event generation, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_T RGG</i>	trigger event generation, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_B RKG</i>	break event generation, TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* software generate update event*/
timer_event_software_generate (TIMER0, TIMER_EVENT_SRC_UPG);
```

timer_break_struct_para_init

The description of timer_break_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-518. Function timer_break_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_break_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void timer_break_struct_para_init(timer_break_parameter_struct* breakpara);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER break parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
breakpara	TIMER break parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-483. Structure timer break parameter struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER break parameter struct with a default value */
```

```
timer_break_parameter_struct timer_breakpara;
timer_break_struct_para_init(timer_breakpara);
```

timer_break_config

The description of timer_break_config is shown as below:

Table 3-519. Function timer_break_config

Function name	timer_break_config
Function prototype	void timer_break_config(uint32_t timer_periph, timer_break_parameter_struct* breakpara);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER break function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
breakpara	TIMER break parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-483, Structure timer break parameter struct.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 break function */

timer_break_parameter_struct timer_breakpara;

timer_breakpara.runoffstate      = TIMER_ROS_STATE_DISABLE;
timer_breakpara.ideloffstate     = TIMER_IOS_STATE_DISABLE ;
timer_breakpara.deadtime         = 255;
timer_breakpara.breakpolarity    = TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_LOW;
timer_breakpara.outputautostate = TIMER_OUTAUTO_ENABLE;
timer_breakpara.protectmode     = TIMER_CCHP_PROT_0;
timer_breakpara.breakstate       = TIMER_BREAK_ENABLE;

timer_break_config(TIMER0, &timer_breakpara);
```

timer_break_enable

The description of timer_break_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-520. Function timer_break_enable

Function name	timer_break_enable
Function prototype	void timer_break_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable TIMER break function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filled in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 break function*/
timer_break_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_break_disable

The description of timer_break_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-521. Function timer_break_disable

Function name	timer_break_disable
Function prototype	void timer_break_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable TIMER break function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filled in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 break function*/
```

```
timer_break_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_automatic_output_enable

The description of timer_automatic_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-522. Function timer_automatic_output_enable

Function name	timer_automatic_output_enable
Function prototype	void timer_automatic_output_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable TIMER output automatic function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filled in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 output automatic function */

timer_automatic_output_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_automatic_output_disable

The description of timer_automatic_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-523. Function timer_automatic_output_disable

Function name	timer_automatic_output_disable
Function prototype	void timer_automatic_output_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable TIMER output automatic function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filled in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 output automatic function */
```

```
timer_automatic_output_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_primary_output_config

The description of timer_primary_output_config is shown as below:

Table 3-524. Function timer_primary_output_config

Function name	timer_primary_output_config
Function prototype	void timer_primary_output_config(uint32_t timer_periph, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER primary output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 primary output function */
timer_primary_output_config (TIMER0, ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_control_shadow_config

The description of timer_channel_control_shadow_config is shown as below:

Table 3-525. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_config

Function name	timer_channel_control_shadow_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_control_shadow_config(uint32_t timer_periph, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	channel commutation control shadow register enable
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
ENABLE	enable function
DISABLE	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* channel capture/compare control shadow register enable */
timer_channel_control_shadow_config (TIMER0, ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config

The description of timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config is shown as below:

Table 3-526. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config

Function name	timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t ccuctl);
Function descriptions	configure commutation control shadow register update control
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
ccuctl	channel control shadow register update control
TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCU	the shadow registers update by when CMTG bit is set
TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCUTRI	the shadow registers update by when CMTG bit is set or an rising edge of TRGI occurs
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel control shadow register update when CMTG bit is set */
```

```
timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config (TIMER0, TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCU);
```

timer_channel_output_struct_para_init

The description of timer_channel_output_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-527. Function timer_channel_output_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_channel_output_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_struct_para_init(timer_oc_parameter_struct* ocpars);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel output parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ocpara	TIMER channel output parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-484. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER channel output parameter struct with a default value */
timer_oc_parameter_struct timer_ocinitpara;
timer_channel_output_struct_para_init(timer_ocinitpara);
```

timer_channel_output_config

The description of timer_channel_output_config is shown as below:

Table 3-528. Function timer_channel_output_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_oc_parameter_struct* ocpars);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))

<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
ocpara	TIMER channel output parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-484. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output function */

timer_oc_parameter_struct timer_ocinitpara;

timer_ocinitpara.outputstate = TIMER_CCX_ENABLE;
timer_ocinitpara.outputnstate = TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE;
timer_ocinitpara.ocpolarity = TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH;
timer_ocinitpara.ocnpolarity = TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH;
timer_ocinitpara.ocidlestate = TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_HIGH;
timer_ocinitpara.ocnidlestate = TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_LOW;
timer_channel_output_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_ocinitpara);

```

timer_channel_output_mode_config

The description of `timer_channel_output_mode_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-529. Function `timer_channel_output_mode_config`

Function name	timer_channel_output_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output compare mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx (x=0..2))

<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
<i>ocmode</i>	channel output compare mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_TIMING</i>	timing mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_ACITIVE</i>	set the channel output
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_INACTIVE</i>	clear the channel output
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_TOGGLEGGLE</i>	toggle on match
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_FORCELOW</i>	force low mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_FORCEHIGH</i>	force high mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM0</i>	PWM mode 0
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM1</i>	PWM mode 1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel PWM 0 mode */
timer_channel_output_mode_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM0);
```

timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config

The description of `timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-530. Function `timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config`

Function name	timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint32_t pulse);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output pulse value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>timer_periph</i>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	

channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
pulse	channel output pulse value (0~65535)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output pulse value */
timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, 399);
```

timer_channel_output_shadow_config

The description of `timer_channel_output_shadow_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-531. Function `timer_channel_output_shadow_config`

Function name	<code>timer_channel_output_shadow_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void timer_channel_output_shadow_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocshadow);</code>
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output shadow function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
ocshadow	channel output shadow state
<i>TIMER_OC_SHADOW_ENABLE</i>	channel output shadow state enable
<i>TIMER_OC_SHADOW_DISABLE</i>	channel output shadow state disable
Output parameter{out}	

-	-	-
Return value		
-	-	-

Example:

```
/*configure TIMER0 channel 0 output shadow function */

timer_channel_output_shadow_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_OC_SHADOW_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_output_fast_config

The description of timer_channel_output_fast_config is shown as below:

Table 3-532. Function timer_channel_output_fast_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_fast_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_fast_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ofast);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output fast function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
TIMER_CH_3	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
ofast	channel output fast function
TIMER_OC_FAST_ENABLE	channel output fast function enable
TIMER_OC_FAST_DISABLE	channel output fast function disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output fast function */

timer_channel_output_fast_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_OC_FAST_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_output_clear_config

The description of timer_channel_output_clear_config is shown as below:

Table 3-533. Function timer_channel_output_clear_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_clear_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_clear_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t occlear);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output clear function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER periphera
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
occlear	channel output clear function
<i>TIMER_OC_CLEAR_ENABLE</i>	channel output clear function enable
<i>TIMER_OC_CLEAR_DISABLE</i>	channel output clear function disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output clear function */
timer_channel_output_clear_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TMR_OC_CLEAR_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_output_polarity_config

The description of timer_channel_output_polarity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-534. Function timer_channel_output_polarity_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_polarity_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_polarity_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocpolarity);

Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output polarity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
ocpolarity	channel output polarity
<i>TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH</i>	channel output polarity is high
<i>TIMER_OC_POLARITY_LOW</i>	channel output polarity is low
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output polarity */

timer_channel_output_polarity_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH);
```

timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config

The description of `timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-535. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config

Function name	timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocnpolarity);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel complementary output polarity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	

channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0(TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1(TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2(TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3(TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
ocpolarity	channel complementary output polarity
<i>TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_H</i>	channel complementary output polarity is high
<i>TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_L</i>	channel complementary output polarity is low
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 complementary output polarity */

timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TICKER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH);
```

timer_channel_output_state_config

The description of `timer_channel_output_state_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-536. Function `timer_channel_output_state_config`

Function name	timer_channel_output_state_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_state_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint32_t state);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel enable state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0(TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1(TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2(TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3(TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
state	TIMER channel enable state

<i>TIMER_CCX_ENABLE</i>	channel enable
<i>TIMER_CCX_DISABLE</i>	channel disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 enable state */

timer_channel_output_state_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_CCX_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config

The description of `timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-537. Function `timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config`

Function name	timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocnstate);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel complementary output enable state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>timer_periph</i>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<i>channel</i>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0, <i>TIMERx (x=0, 14..16)</i>
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1, <i>TIMERx (x=0)</i>
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2, <i>TIMERx (x=0)</i>
Input parameter{in}	
<i>state</i>	TIMER channel complementary output enable state
<i>TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE</i>	channel complementary enable
<i>TIMER_CCXN_DISABLE</i>	channel complementary disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 complementary output enable state */
```

```
timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
```

```
TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_input_struct_para_init

The description of timer_channel_input_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-538. Function timer_channel_input_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_channel_input_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void timer_channel_input_struct_para_init(timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpara);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel input parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
icpara	TIMER channel input parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-485. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER channel input parameter struct with a default value */

timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;

timer_channel_input_struct_para_init(&timer_icinitpara);
```

timer_input_capture_config

The description of timer_input_capture_config is shown as below:

Table 3-539. Function timer_input_capture_config

Function name	timer_input_capture_config
Function prototype	void timer_input_capture_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpara);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER input capture parameter
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0(TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))

<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1(TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2(TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3(TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	
<i>icpara</i>	TIMER channel input parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-485. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 input capture parameter */

timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;

timer_icinitpara.icpolarity = TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING;
timer_icinitpara.icselection = TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI;
timer_icinitpara.icprescaler = TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1;
timer_icinitpara.icfilter = 0x0;
timer_input_capture_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_icinitpara);

```

timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config

The description of timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-540. Function timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config

Function name	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t prescaler);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel input capture prescaler value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<i>timer_periph</i>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
<i>channel</i>	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0(TIMERx (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1(TIMERx (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2(TIMERx (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3(TIMERx (x=0..2))
Input parameter{in}	

prescaler	channel input capture prescaler value
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1</i>	no prescaler
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 input capture prescaler value */

timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2);
```

timer_channel_capture_value_register_read

The description of `timer_channel_capture_value_register_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-541. Function `timer_channel_capture_value_register_read`

Function name	timer_channel_capture_value_register_read
Function prototype	uint32_t timer_channel_capture_value_register_read(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel);
Function descriptions	read TIMER channel capture compare register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0(<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2, 13..16))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1(<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2(<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3(<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..2))
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	channel capture compare register value (0~65535)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 channel 0 capture compare register value */

uint32_t ch0_value = 0;
```

```
ch0_value = timer_channel_capture_value_register_read(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0);
```

timer_input_pwm_capture_config

The description of timer_input_pwm_capture_config is shown as below:

Table 3-542. Function timer_input_pwm_capture_config

Function name	timer_input_pwm_capture_config
Function prototype	void timer_input_pwm_capture_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpwm);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER input pwm capture function
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1
Input parameter{in}	
icpwm	TIMER channel input pwm parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-485. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 input pwm capture parameter */
timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;
timer_icinitpara.icpolarity = TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING;
timer_icinitpara.icselection = TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI;
timer_icinitpara.icprescaler = TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1;
timer_icinitpara.icfilter = 0x0;
timer_input_pwm_capture_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_icinitpara);
```

timer_hall_mode_config

The description of timer_hall_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-543. Function timer_hall_mode_config

Function name	timer_hall_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_hall_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t hallmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER hall sensor mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
hallmode	TIMER hall sensor mode state
TIMER_HALLINTERFACE_CE_ENABLE	TIMER hall sensor mode enable
TIMER_HALLINTERFACE_CE_DISABLE	TIMER hall sensor mode disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 hall sensor mode */

timer_hall_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_HALLINTERFACE_ENABLE);
```

timer_input_trigger_source_select

The description of timer_input_trigger_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-544. Function timer_input_trigger_source_select

Function name	timer_input_trigger_source_select
Function prototype	void timer_input_trigger_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t intrigger);
Function descriptions	select TIMER input trigger source
Precondition	SMC[2:0] = 000
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
intrigger	trigger selection
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITIO	Internal trigger input 0(ITI0, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI1, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))

<i>EL_ITI1</i>	
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_ITI2</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI2, TIMERx(ITI2, TIMERx(x=0..2))
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_ITI3</i>	Internal trigger input 0(ITI3, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_CI0F_ED</i>	CI0 edge flag (CI0F_ED, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_CI0FE0</i>	channel 0 input Filtered output(CI0FE0, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_CI1FE1</i>	channel 1 input Filtered output(CI1FE1, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14))
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_ETIFP</i>	External trigger input filter output(ETIFP, TIMERx(x=0..2))
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 input trigger source */
timer_input_trigger_source_select (TIMER0, TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_ITIO);
```

timer_master_output_trigger_source_select

The description of timer_master_output_trigger_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-545. Function timer_master_output_trigger_source_select

Function name	timer_master_output_trigger_source_select
Function prototype	void timer_master_output_trigger_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t outrigger);
Function descriptions	select TIMER master mode output trigger source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 5, 14)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
outrigger	master mode control
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_RESET</i>	Reset. When the UPG bit in the TIMERx_SWEVG register is set or a reset is generated by the slave mode controller, a TRGO pulse occurs. And in the latter case, the signal on TRGO is delayed compared to the actual reset
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC</i>	Enable. This mode is useful to start several timers at the same time or to

<i>_ENABLE</i>	control a window in which a slave timer is enabled. In this mode the master mode controller selects the counter enable signal as TRGO. The counter enable signal is set when CEN control bit is set or the trigger input in pause mode is high. There is a delay between the trigger input in pause mode and the TRGO output, except if the master-slave mode is selected.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_UPDATE</i>	Update. In this mode the master mode controller selects the update event as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_CH0</i>	Capture/compare pulse. In this mode the master mode controller generates a TRGO pulse when a capture or a compare match occurred in channel 0.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O0CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O0CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O1CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O1CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O2CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O2CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O3CPRE</i>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O3CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 master mode output trigger source */
timer_master_output_trigger_source_select (TIMER0, TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_RESET);
```

timer_slave_mode_select

The description of timer_slave_mode_select is shown as below:

Table 3-546. Function timer_slave_mode_select

Function name	timer_slave_mode_select
Function prototype	void timer_slave_mode_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t slavemode);
Function descriptions	select TIMER slave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
slavemode	slave mode
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_DISABLE</i>	slave mode disable, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)

<i>TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0</i>	quadrature decoder mode 0, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE1</i>	quadrature decoder mode 1, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE2</i>	quadrature decoder mode 2, TIMERx(x=0..2)
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_RESTART</i>	restart mode, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_PAUSE</i>	pause mode, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_EVENT</i>	event mode, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_EXTERNAL0</i>	external clock mode 0, TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 slave mode */
timer_slave_mode_select(TIMER0, TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0);
```

timer_master_slave_mode_config

The description of timer_master_slave_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-547. Function timer_master_slave_mode_config

Function name	timer_master_slave_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_master_slave_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t masterslave);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER master slave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
masterslave	master slave mode state
<i>TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_ENABLE</i>	master slave mode enable
<i>TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_DISABLE</i>	master slave mode disable

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 master slave mode */
timer_master_slave_mode_config(TIMER0, TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_ENABLE);
```

timer_external_trigger_config

The description of timer_external_trigger_config is shown as below:

Table 3-548. Function timer_external_trigger_config

Function name	timer_external_trigger_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_trigger_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER external trigger input
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
extprescaler	external trigger prescaler
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF	no divided
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2	divided by 2
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4	divided by 4
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8	divided by 8
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	external trigger polarity
TIMER_ETP_FALLING	active low or falling edge active
TIMER_ETP_RISING	active high or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	
extfilter	external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 external trigger input */

timer_external_trigger_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,
    TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 10);
  
```

timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config

The description of timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-549. Function timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config

Function name	timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t decomode, uint16_t ic0polarity, uint16_t ic1polarity);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER quadrature decoder mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..2)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
decomode	quadrature decoder mode
TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0	counter counts on CI0FE0 edge depending on CI1FE1 level
TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE1	counter counts on CI1FE1 edge depending on CI0FE0 level
TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE2	counter counts on both CI0FE0 and CI1FE1 edges depending on the level of the other input
Input parameter{in}	
ic0polarity	IC0 polarity
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING	capture rising edge
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING	capture falling edge
Input parameter{in}	
ic1polarity	IC1 polarity
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING	capture rising edge
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING	capture falling edge
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 quadrature decoder mode */

timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_QUAD_DECODER_MODE0,
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING);
```

timer_internal_clock_config

The description of timer_internal_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-550. Function timer_internal_clock_config

Function name	timer_internal_clock_config
Function prototype	void timer_internal_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER internal clock mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 internal clock mode */

timer_internal_clock_config (TIMER0);
```

timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config

The description of timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-551. Function timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config

Function name	timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config
Function prototype	void timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t intrigger);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the internal trigger as external clock input
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_input_trigger_source_select
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
intrigger	trigger selection

<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_ITI0</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI0), TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_ITI1</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI1) , TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_ITI2</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI2) , TIMERx(x=0..2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the internal trigger ITI0 as external clock input */
timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config (TIMER0, TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_ITI0);
```

timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config

The description of timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-552. Function timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config

Function name	timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t exttrigger, uint16_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the external trigger as external clock input
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_input_trigger_source_select
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 14)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
exttrigger	external trigger selection
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_CI0F_ED</i>	CI0 edge flag (CI0F_ED)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_CI0FE0</i>	channel 0 input Filtered output (CI0FE0)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS</i> <i>EL_CI1FE1</i>	channel 1 input Filtered output (CI1FE1)
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active

<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_BOTH_EDGE</i>	falling edge or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	
<i>extfilter</i>	external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external trigger CI0FE0 as external clock input */
timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config(TIMER0,
    TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_CI0FE0, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, 0);
```

timer_external_clock_mode0_config

The description of timer_external_clock_mode0_config is shown as below:

Table 3-553. Function timer_external_clock_mode0_config

Function name	timer_external_clock_mode0_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_clock_mode0_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the external clock mode0
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_external_trigger_config
Input parameter{in}	
<i>timer_periph</i>	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<i>extprescaler</i>	ETI external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
Input parameter{in}	
<i>expolarity</i>	ETI external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	

extfilter	ETI external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 the external clock mode0 */

timer_external_clock_mode0_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 0);

```

timer_external_clock_mode1_config

The description of timer_external_clock_mode1_config is shown as below:

Table 3-554. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_config

Function name	timer_external_clock_mode1_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_clock_mode1_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the external clock mode1
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_external_trigger_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
extprescaler	ETI external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	ETI external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	
extfilter	ETI external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external clock mode1 */
timer_external_clock_mode1_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 0);
```

timer_external_clock_mode1_disable

The description of timer_external_clock_mode1_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-555. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_disable

Function name	timer_external_clock_mode1_disable
Function prototype	void timer_external_clock_mode1_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable TIMER the external clock mode1
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 the external clock mode1 */
timer_external_clock_mode1_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_channel_remap_config

The description of timer_channel_remap_config is shown as below:

Table 3-556. Function timer_channel_remap_config

Function name	timer_channel_remap_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_remap_config (uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t remap);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel remap function
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_external_trigger_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	

remap	remap function selection
<i>TIMER13_CI0_RMP_GPIO</i>	timer13 channel 0 input is connected to GPIO(TIMER13_CH0)
<i>TIMER13_CI0_RMP_RTCCLK</i>	timer13 channel 0 input is connected to the RTCCLK
<i>TIMER13_CI0_RMP_HXTAL_DIV32</i>	timer13 channel 0 input is connected to HXTAL/32 clock
<i>TIMER13_CI0_RMP_CKOUTSEL</i>	timer13 channel 0 input is connected to CKOUTSEL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER13 channel 0 input is connected to GPIO */
timer_channel_remap_config (TIMER13, TIMER13_CI0_RMP_GPIO);
```

timer_write_chxval_register_config

The description of timer_write_chxval_register_config is shown as below:

Table 3-557. Function timer_write_chxval_register_config

Function name	timer_write_chxval_register_config
Function prototype	void timer_write_chxval_register_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t ccsel);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER write CHxVAL register selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..2, 13..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
ccsel	write CHxVAL register selection
<i>TIMER_CHVSEL_DISABLE</i>	no effect
<i>TIMER_CHVSEL_ENABLE</i>	when write the CHxVAL register, if the write value is same as the CHxVAL value, the write access is ignored
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 write CHxVAL register selection */

timer_write_chxval_register_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CHVSEL_ENABLE);

```

timer_output_value_selection_config

The description of timer_output_value_selection_config is shown as below:

Table 3-558. Function timer_output_value_selection_config

Function name	timer_output_value_selection_config
Function prototype	void timer_output_value_selection_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t outsel);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER output value selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0, 14..16)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
outsel	output value selection
<i>TIMER_OUTSEL_DISA BLE</i>	no effect
<i>TIMER_OUTSEL_ENAB LE</i>	if POEN and IOS is 0, the output disabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER output value selection */

timer_output_value_selection_config(TIMER0, TIMER_OUTSEL_ENABLE);

```

3.22. TSI

Touch Sensing Interface (TSI) provides a convenient solution for touch keys, sliders and capacitive proximity sensing applications. The TSI registers are listed in chapter [3.22.1](#), the TSI firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.22.2](#).

3.22.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

TSI registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-559. TSI Registers

Registers	Descriptions
TSI_CTL0	Control register 0
TSI_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
TSI_INTC	Interrupt flag clear register
TSI_INTF	Interrupt flag register
TSI_PHM	Pin hysteresis mode register
TSI_ASW	Analog switch register
TSI_SAMPCFG	Sample configuration register
TSI_CHCFG	Channel configuration register
TSI_GCTL	Group control register
TSI_GxCYCN (x=0..5)	Group x cycle number registers
TSI_CTL1	Control register 1

3.22.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

TSI firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-560. TSI firmware function

Function name	Function description
tsi_deinit	reset TSI peripheral
tsi_init	initialize TSI pulse prescaler, charge pulse, transfer pulse, max cycle number
tsi_enable	enable TSI module
tsi_disable	disable TSI module
tsi_sample_pin_enable	enable sample pin
tsi_sample_pin_disable	disable sample pin
tsi_channel_pin_enable	enable channel pin
tsi_channel_pin_disable	disable channel pin
tsi_sofeware_mode_config	configure TSI triggering by software
tsi_software_start	start a charge-transfer sequence when TSI is in software trigger mode
tsi_software_stop	stop a charge-transfer sequence when TSI is in software trigger mode
tsi_hardware_mode_config	configure TSI triggering by hardware
tsi_pin_mode_config	configure TSI pin mode when charge-transfer sequence is IDLE
tsi_extend_charge_config	configure extend charge state
tsi_pulse_config	configure charge pulse and transfer pulse
tsi_max_number_config	configure the max cycle number of a charge-transfer sequence
tsi_hysteresis_on	switch on hysteresis pin

Function name	Function description
tsi_hysteresis_off	switch off hysteresis pin
tsi_analog_on	switch on analog pin
tsi_analog_off	switch off analog pin
tsi_group_enable	enable group
tsi_group_disable	disable group
tsi_group_status_get	get group complete status
tsi_group0_cycle_get	get the cycle number for group0 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
tsi_group1_cycle_get	get the cycle number for group1 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
tsi_group2_cycle_get	get the cycle number for group2 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
tsi_group3_cycle_get	get the cycle number for group3 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
tsi_group4_cycle_get	get the cycle number for group4 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
tsi_group5_cycle_get	get the cycle number for group5 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
tsi_flag_get	get flag
tsi_flag_clear	clear flag
tsi_interrupt_enable	enable TSI interrupt
tsi_interrupt_disable	disable TSI interrupt
tsi_interrupt_flag_get	get TSI interrupt flag
tsi_interrupt_flag_clear	Clear TSI interrupt flag

tsi_deinit

The description of tsi_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-561. Function tsi_deinit

Function name	tsi_deinit
Function prototype	void tsi_deinit (void);
Function descriptions	reset TSI peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* reset TSI */

tsi_deinit();

```

tsi_init

The description of tsi_init is shown as below:

Table 3-562. Function tsi_init

Function name	tsi_init
Function prototype	void tsi_init (uint32_t prescaler, uint32_t charge_duration, uint32_t transfer_duration, uint32_t max_number);
Function descriptions	initialize TSI pulse prescaler, charge pulse, transfer pulse, max cycle number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	CTCLK clock division factor
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_1</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK}$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_2</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 2$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_4</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 4$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_8</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 8$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_16</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 16$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_32</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 32$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_64</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 64$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_128</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 128$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_256</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 256$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_512</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 512$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_1024</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 1024$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_2048</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 2048$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_4096</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 4096$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_8192</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 8192$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_16384</i> 4	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 16384$
<i>TSI_CTC DIV_32768</i> 8	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 32768$
Input parameter{in}	
charge_duration	charge state duration time
<i>TSI_CHARGE_1CTCL K(x=1..16)</i>	the duration time of charge state is x CTCLK
Input parameter{in}	
transfer_duration	charge transfer state duration time
<i>TSI_TRANSFER_xCTC LK(x=1..16)SS_CLEAR</i>	the duration time of transfer state is x CTCLK

Input parameter{in}	
max_number	max cycle number
<i>TSI_MAXNUM255</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 255
<i>TSI_MAXNUM511</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 511
<i>TSI_MAXNUM1023</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 1023
<i>TSI_MAXNUM2047</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 2047
<i>TSI_MAXNUM4095</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 4095
<i>TSI_MAXNUM8191</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 8191
<i>TSI_MAXNUM16383</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 16383
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* init TSI */

tsi_init (TSI_CTCDIV_DIV4096, TSI_CHARGE_10CTCLK, TSI_TRANSFER_8CTCLK,
TSI_MAXNUM511);
```

tsi_enable

The description of tsi_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-563. Function tsi_enable

Function name	tsi_enable
Function prototype	void tsi_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable TSI module
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TSI module */

tsi_enable ();
```

tsi_disable

The description of tsi_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-564. Function tsi_disable

Function name	tsi_disable
Function prototype	void tsi_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable TSI module
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TSI module */

tsi_disable();
```

tsi_sample_pin_enable

The description of tsi_sample_pin_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-565. Function tsi_sample_pin_enable

Function name	tsi_sample_pin_enable
Function prototype	void tsi_sample_pin_enable (uint32_t sample);
Function descriptions	enable sample pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sample	sample pin
<i>TSI_SAMPCFG_GxPy</i> (<i>x</i> =0..5, <i>y</i> =0..3)	pin <i>y</i> of group <i>x</i> is sample pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable G5P3 sample pin */

tsi_sample_pin_enable (TSI_SAMPCFG_G5P3);
```

tsi_sample_pin_disable

The description of tsi_sample_pin_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-566. Function tsi_sample_pin_disable

Function name	tsi_sample_pin_disable
Function prototype	void tsi_sample_pin_disable (uint32_t sample);
Function descriptions	disable sample pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sample	sample pin
TSI_SAMPCFG_GxPy (x=0..5,y=0..3)	pin y of group x is sample pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable G5P3 sample pin */
tsi_sample_pin_disable (TSI_SAMPCFG_G5P3);
```

tsi_channel_pin_enable

The description of tsi_channel_pin_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-567. Function tsi_channel_pin_enable

Function name	tsi_channel_pin_enable
Function prototype	void tsi_channel_pin_enable (uint32_t channel);
Function descriptions	enable channel pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel pin
TSI_CHCFG_GxPy (x=0..5,y=0..3)	pin y of group x
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable G5P3 channel pin */
tsi_channel_pin_enable (TSI_CHCFG_G5P3);
```

tsi_channel_pin_disable

The description of tsi_channel_pin_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-568. Function tsi_channel_pin_disable

Function name	tsi_channel_pin_disable
Function prototype	void tsi_channel_pin_disable(uint32_t channel);
Function descriptions	disable channel pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel pin
<i>TSI_CHCFG_GxPy(x=0..5,y=0..3)</i>	pin y of group x
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable G5P3 channel pin */
tsi_channel_pin_disable (TSI_CHCFG_G5P3);
```

tsi_sofeware_mode_config

The description of tsi_sofeware_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-569. Function tsi_sofeware_mode_config

Function name	tsi_sofeware_mode_config
Function prototype	void tsi_sofeware_mode_config (void);
Function descriptions	configure TSI triggering by software
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TSI triggering by software */
tsi_sofeware_mode_config ();
```

tsi_software_start

The description of tsi_software_start is shown as below:

Table 3-570. Function tsi_software_start

Function name	tsi_software_start
Function prototype	void tsi_software_start (void);
Function descriptions	start a charge-transfer sequence when TSI is in software trigger mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start a charge-transfer sequence when TSI is in software trigger mode */

tsi_software_start();
```

tsi_software_stop

The description of tsi_software_stop is shown as below:

Table 3-571. Function tsi_software_stop

Function name	tsi_software_stop
Function prototype	void tsi_software_stop (void);
Function descriptions	stop a charge-transfer sequence when TSI is in software trigger mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* stop a charge-transfer sequence when TSI is in software trigger mode */

tsi_software_stop();
```

tsi.hardware_mode_config

The description of tsi.hardware_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-572. Function tsi.hardware_mode_config

Function name	tsi.hardware_mode_config
Function prototype	void tsi.hardware_mode_config (uint8_t trigger_edge);
Function descriptions	configure TSI triggering by hardware
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
trigger_edge	the edge type in hardware trigger mode
<i>TSI_FALLING_TRIGGER</i> <i>R</i>	falling edge trigger TSI charge transfer sequence
<i>TSI_RISING_TRIGGER</i>	rising edge trigger TSI charge transfer sequence
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TSI triggering by hardware */

tsi.hardware_mode_config (TSI_FALLING_TRIGGER);
```

tsi.pin_mode_config

The description of tsi.pin_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-573. Function tsi.pin_mode_config

Function name	tsi.pin_mode_config
Function prototype	void tsi.pin_mode_config (uint8_t pin_mode);
Function descriptions	configure TSI pin mode when charge-transfer sequence is IDLE
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pin_mode	pin mode when charge-transfer sequence is IDLE
<i>TSI_OUTPUT_LOW</i>	TSI pin will output low when IDLE
<i>TSI_INPUT_FLOATING</i>	TSI pin will keep input_floating when IDLE
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

/* configure TSI pin mode when charge-transfer sequence is IDLE */

```
tsi_pin_mode_config (TSI_OUTPUT_LOW);
```

tsi_extend_charge_config

The description of tsi_extend_charge_config is shown as below:

Table 3-574. Function tsi_extend_charge_config

Function name	tsi_extend_charge_config
Function prototype	void tsi_extend_charge_config (ControlStatus extend, uint8_t prescaler, uint32_t max_duration);
Function descriptions	configure extend charge state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
extend	enable or disable extend charge state
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable extend charge state
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable extend charge state
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	ECCLK clock division factor
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV1</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK}$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV2</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 2$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV3</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 3$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV4</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 4$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV5</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 5$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV6</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 6$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV7</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 7$
<i>TSI_EXTEND_DIV8</i>	$f_{ECCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 8$
Input parameter{in}	
max_duration	extend charge state maximum duration time
<i>value range 1...128</i>	extend charge state maximum duration time is $1*t_{ECCLK} \sim 128*t_{ECCLK}$
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure extend charge state */
tsi_extend_charge_config (ENABLE, TSI_EXTEND_DIV2, 10);
```

tsi_pulse_config

The description of tsi_pulse_config is shown as below:

Table 3-575. Function tsi_pulse_config

Function name	tsi_pulse_config
Function prototype	void tsi_pulse_config (uint32_t prescaler, uint32_t charge_duration, uint32_t transfer_duration);
Function descriptions	configure charge pulse and transfer pulse
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	CTCLK clock division factor
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV1</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK}$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV2</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 2$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV4</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 4$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV8</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 8$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV16</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 16$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV32</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 32$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV64</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 64$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV128</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 128$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV256</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 256$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV512</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 512$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV1024</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 1024$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV2048</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 2048$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV4096</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 4096$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV8192</i>	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 8192$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV16384</i> 4	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 16384$
<i>TSI_CTCDIV_DIV32768</i> 8	$f_{CTCLK} = f_{HCLK} / 32768$
Input parameter{in}	
charge_duration	charge state duration time
<i>TSI_CHARGE_1CTCL K (x=1..16)</i>	the duration time of charge state is x CTCLK
Input parameter{in}	
transfer_duration	charge transfer state duration time
<i>TSI_TRANSFER_xCTC LK (x=1..16)</i>	the duration time of transfer state is x CTCLK
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure charge pulse and transfer pulse */
```

```
tsi_pulse_config(TSI_CTC DIV_DIV1024, TSI_CHARGE_10CTCLK,
TSI_TRANSFER_8CTCLK);
```

tsi_max_number_config

The description of tsi_max_number_config is shown as below:

Table 3-576. Function tsi_max_number_config

Function name	tsi_max_number_config
Function prototype	void tsi_max_number_config (uint32_t max_number);
Function descriptions	configure the max cycle number of a charge-transfer sequence
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
max_number	max cycle number
<i>TSI_MAXNUM255</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 255
<i>TSI_MAXNUM511</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 511
<i>TSI_MAXNUM1023</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 1023
<i>TSI_MAXNUM2047</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 2047
<i>TSI_MAXNUM4095</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 4095
<i>TSI_MAXNUM8191</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 8191
<i>TSI_MAXNUM16383</i>	the max cycle number of a sequence is 16383
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the max cycle number of a charge-transfer sequence */

tsi_max_number_config (TSI_MAXNUM1023);
```

tsi_hysteresis_on

The description of tsi_hysteresis_on is shown as below:

Table 3-577. Function tsi_hysteresis_on

Function name	tsi_hysteresis_on
Function prototype	void tsi_hysteresis_on (uint32_t group_pin);
Function descriptions	switch on hysteresis pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
group_pin	select pin which will be switched on hysteresis
<i>TSI_PHM_GxPy</i>	pin y of group x switch on hysteresis

(x=0..5,y=0..3)	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* switch on hysteresis pin */

tsi_hysteresis_on (TSI_PHM_G5P3);
```

tsi_hysteresis_off

The description of tsi_hysteresis_off is shown as below:

Table 3-578. Function tsi_hysteresis_off

Function name	tsi_hysteresis_off
Function prototype	void tsi_hysteresis_off (uint32_t group_pin);
Function descriptions	switch off hysteresis pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
group_pin	select pin which will be switched off hysteresis
<i>TSI_PHM_GxPy(x=0..5, y=0..3)</i>	pin y of group x switch off hysteresis
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* switch off hysteresis pin */

tsi_hysteresis_off (TSI_PHM_G5P3);
```

tsi_analog_on

The description of tsi_analog_on is shown as below:

Table 3-579. Function tsi_analog_on

Function name	tsi_analog_on
Function prototype	void tsi_analog_on (uint32_t group_pin);
Function descriptions	switch on analog pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

group_pin	select pin which will be switched on analog
<i>TSI_ASW_GxPy</i> (<i>x</i> =0..5, <i>y</i> =0..3)	pin <i>y</i> of group <i>x</i> switch on analog
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* switch on analog pin */

tsi_analog_on (TSI_ASW_G5P3);
```

tsi_analog_off

The description of tsi_analog_off is shown as below:

Table 3-580. Function tsi_analog_off

Function name	tsi_analog_off
Function prototype	void tsi_analog_off (uint32_t group_pin);
Function descriptions	switch off analog pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
group_pin	select pin which will be switched off analog
<i>TSI_ASW_GxPy</i> (<i>x</i> =0..5, <i>y</i> =0..3)	pin <i>y</i> of group <i>x</i> switch off analog
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* switch off analog pin */

tsi_analog_off (TSI_ASW_G5P3);
```

tsi_group_enable

The description of tsi_group_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-581. Function tsi_group_enable

Function name	tsi_group_enable
Function prototype	void tsi_group_enable (uint32_t group);
Function descriptions	enable group
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
group	select group to be enabled
<i>TSI_GCTL_GEx(x=0..5)</i>	the x group will be enabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable group 5 */
tsi_group_enable (TSI_GCTL_GE5);
```

tsi_group_disable

The description of tsi_group_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-582. Function tsi_group_disable

Function name	tsi_group_disable
Function prototype	void tsi_group_disable (uint32_t group);
Function descriptions	disbale group
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
group	select group to be disabled
<i>TSI_GCTL_GEx (x=0..5)</i>	the x group will be disabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable group 5 */
tsi_group_disable (TSI_GCTL_GE5);
```

tsi_group_status_get

The description of tsi_group_status_get is shown as below:

Table 3-583. Function tsi_group_status_get

Function name	tsi_group_status_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus tsi_group_status_get (uint32_t group);
Function descriptions	get group complete status

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
group	select group
TSI_GCTL_GCx(x=0..5)	get the complete status of group x
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get group complete status */

FlagStatus flag = RESET;

flag = tsi_flag_get (TSI_GCTL_GC5);
```

tsi_group0_cycle_get

The description of tsi_group0_cycle_get is shown as below:

Table 3-584. Function tsi_group0_cycle_get

Function name	tsi_group0_cycle_get
Function prototype	uint16_t tsi_group0_cycle_get (void);
Function descriptions	get the cycle number for group0 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0-8192

Example:

```
/* get the cycle number for group0 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes */

uint16_t flag = 0;

flag = tsi_group0_cycle_get ();
```

tsi_group1_cycle_get

The description of tsi_group1_cycle_get is shown as below:

Table 3-585. Function tsi_group1_cycle_get

Function name	tsi_group1_cycle_get
Function prototype	uint16_t tsi_group1_cycle_get (void);
Function descriptions	get the cycle number for group1 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0-8192

Example:

```
/* get the cycle number for group1 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes */

uint16_t flag = 0;

flag = tsi_group1_cycle_get();
```

tsi_group2_cycle_get

The description of tsi_group2_cycle_get is shown as below:

Table 3-586. Function tsi_group2_cycle_get

Function name	tsi_group2_cycle_get
Function prototype	uint16_t tsi_group2_cycle_get (void);
Function descriptions	get the cycle number for group2 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0 - 8192

Example:

```
/* get the cycle number for group2 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes */

uint16_t flag = 0;

flag = tsi_group2_cycle_get();
```

tsi_group3_cycle_get

The description of tsi_group3_cycle_get is shown as below:

Table 3-587. Function tsi_group3_cycle_get

Function name	tsi_group3_cycle_get
Function prototype	uint16_t tsi_group3_cycle_get (void);
Function descriptions	get the cycle number for group3 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0 - 8192

Example:

```
/* get the cycle number for group3 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes */

uint16_t flag = 0;

flag = tsi_group3_cycle_get();
```

tsi_group4_cycle_get

The description of tsi_group4_cycle_get is shown as below:

Table 3-588. Function tsi_group4_cycle_get

Function name	tsi_group4_cycle_get
Function prototype	uint16_t tsi_group4_cycle_get (void);
Function descriptions	get the cycle number for group4 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0 - 8192

Example:

```
/* get the cycle number for group4 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes */
```

```

uint16_t flag = 0;
flag = tsi_group4_cycle_get ();

```

tsi_group5_cycle_get

The description of tsi_group5_cycle_get is shown as below:

Table 3-589. Function tsi_group5_cycle_get

Function name	tsi_group5_cycle_get	
Function prototype	uint16_t tsi_group5_cycle_get (void);	
Function descriptions	get the cycle number for group5 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes	
Precondition	-	
The called functions	-	
Input parameter{in}		
-	-	
Output parameter{out}		
-	-	
Return value		
uint16_t	0 - 8192	

Example:

```

/* get the cycle number for group5 as soon as a charge-transfer sequence completes */
uint16_t flag = 0;
flag = tsi_group5_cycle_get ();

```

tsi_flag_get

The description of tsi_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-590. Function tsi_flag_get

Function name	tsi_flag_get	
Function prototype	FlagStatus tsi_flag_get (uint32_t flag);	
Function descriptions	get flag	
Precondition	-	
The called functions	-	
Input parameter{in}		
flag	specify which flag	
TSI_FLAG_CTCF	charge-transfer complete flag	
TSI_FLAG_MNERR	max Cycle Number Error	
Output parameter{out}		
-	-	
Return value		

FlagStatus	SET or RESET
-------------------	--------------

Example:

```
/* get TSI_FLAG_CTCF flag */
FlagStatus flag = RESET;
flag = tsi_flag_get (TSI_FLAG_CTCF);
```

tsi_flag_clear

The description of **tsi_flag_clear** is shown as below:

Table 3-591. Function tsi_flag_clear

Function name	tsi_flag_clear
Function prototype	void tsi_flag_clear (uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	select flag which will be cleared
<i>TSI_FLAG_CTCF</i>	clear charge-transfer complete flag
<i>TSI_FLAG_MNERR</i>	clear max cycle number error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TSI_FLAG_CTCF_CLR flag */
tsi_flag_clear (TSI_FLAG_CTCF_CLR);
```

tsi_interrupt_enable

The description of **tsi_interrupt_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-592. Function tsi_interrupt_enable

Function name	tsi_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void tsi_interrupt_enable (uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	enable TSI interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
source	select interrupt which will be enabled
<i>TSI_INT_CCTCF</i>	charge-transfer complete flag interrupt enable

<i>TSI_INT_MNERR</i>	max cycle number error interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TSI_INT_CCTCF interrupt */
tsi_interrupt_enable (TSI_INT_CCTCF);
```

tsi_interrupt_disable

The description of **tsi_interrupt_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-593. Function tsi_interrupt_disable

Function name	tsi_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void tsi_interrupt_disable(uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	disable TSI interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
source	select interrupt which will be disabled
<i>TSI_INT_CCTCF</i>	charge-transfer complete flag interrupt disable
<i>TSI_INT_MNERR</i>	max cycle number error interrupt disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TSI_INT_CCTCF interrupt */
tsi_interrupt_disable (TSI_INT_CCTCF);
```

tsi_interrupt_flag_get

The description of **tsi_interrupt_flag_get** is shown as below:

Table 3-594. Function tsi_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	tsi_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus tsi_interrupt_flag_get (uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get TSI interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

flag	specify which flag
<i>TSI_INT_FLAG_CTCF</i>	charge-transfer complete flag
<i>TSI_INT_FLAG_MNER</i> <i>R</i>	max Cycle Number Error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get TSI_INT_FLAG_CTCF interrupt flag */

FlagStatus flag = RESET;

flag = tsi_interrupt_flag_get (TSI_INT_FLAG_CTCF);
```

tsi_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `tsi_interrupt_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-595. Function `tsi_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	<code>tsi_interrupt_flag_clear</code>
Function prototype	<code>void tsi_interrupt_flag_clear (uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	clear TSI interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	select flag which will be cleared
<i>TSI_INT_FLAG_CTCF</i>	clear charge-transfer complete flag
<i>TSI_INT_FLAG_MNER</i> <i>R</i>	clear max cycle number error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TSI_INT_FLAG_CTCF interrupt flag */

tsi_interrupt_flag_clear (TSI_INT_FLAG_CTCF);
```

3.23. USART

The Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (USART) provides a flexible serial data exchange interface. The USART registers are listed in chapter [3.23.1](#), the USART

firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.23.2](#).

3.23.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

USART registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-596. USART Registers

Registers	Descriptions
USART_CTL0	Control register 0
USART_CTL1	Control register 1
USART_CTL2	Control register 2
USART_BAUD	Baud rate register
USART_GP	Guard time and prescaler register
USART_RT	Receiver timeout register
USART_CMD	Command register
USART_STAT	Status register
USART_INTC	Status clear register
USART_RDATA	Receive data register
USART_TDATA	Transmit data register
USART_RFCS	Receive FIFO control and status register

3.23.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

USART firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-597. USART firmware function

Function name	Function description
uart_deinit	reset USART
uart_baudrate_set	configure USART baud rate value
uart_parity_config	configure USART parity
uart_word_length_set	configure USART word length
uart_stop_bit_set	configure USART stop bit length
uart_enable	enable USART
uart_disable	disable USART
uart_transmit_config	configure USART transmitter
uart_receive_config	configure USART receiver
uart_data_first_config	data is transmitted/received with the LSB/MSB first
uart_invert_config	configure USART inversion
uart_overrun_enable	enable the USART overrun function
uart_overrun_disable	disable the USART overrun function
uart_oversample_config	configure the USART oversample mode
uart_sample_bit_config	configure the sample bit method
uart_receiver_timeout_enable	enable receiver timeout
uart_receiver_timeout_disable	disable receiver timeout

Function name	Function description
uart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config	configure receiver timeout threshold
uart_data_transmit	USART transmit data function
uart_data_receive	USART receive data function
uart_address_config	configure the address of the USART in wake up by address match mode
uart_address_detection_mode_config	configure address detection mode
uart_mute_mode_enable	enable mute mode
uart_mute_mode_disable	disable mute mode
uart_mute_mode_wakeup_config	configure wakeup method in mute mode
uart_lin_mode_enable	enable LIN mode
uart_lin_mode_disable	disable LIN mode
uart_lin_break_dection_length_config	configure LIN break frame length
uart_halfduplex_enable	enable half duplex mode
uart_halfduplex_disable	disable half duplex mode
uart_clock_enable	enable USART clock
uart_clock_disable	disable USART clock
uart_synchronous_clock_config	configure USART synchronous mode parameters
uart_guard_time_config	configure guard time value in smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_mode_enable	enable smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_mode_disable	disable smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable	enable NACK in smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable	disable NACK in smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable	enable early NACK in smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable	disable early NACK in smartcard mode
uart_smartcard_autoretry_config	configure smartcard auto-retry number
uart_block_length_config	configure block length
uart_irda_mode_enable	enable IrDA mode
uart_irda_mode_disable	disable IrDA mode
uart_prescaler_config	configure the peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power or smartcard mode
uart_irda_lowpower_config	configure IrDA low-power
uart_hardware_flow_rts_config	configure hardware flow control RTS
uart_hardware_flow_cts_config	configure hardware flow control CTS
uart_rs485_driver_enable	enable RS485 driver
uart_rs485_driver_disable	disable RS485 driver
uart_driver_assertime_config	configure driver enable assertion time
uart_driver_deassertime_config	configure driver enable de-assertion time

Function name	Function description
uart_depolarity_config	configure driver enable polarity mode
uart_dma_receive_config	configure USART DMA for reception
uart_dma_transmit_config	configure USART DMA for transmission
uart_reception_error_dma_disable	disable DMA on reception error
uart_reception_error_dma_enable	enable DMA on reception error
uart_wakeup_enable	enable USART to wakeup the mcu from deep-sleep mode
uart_wakeup_disable	disable USART to wakeup the mcu from deep-sleep mode
uart_wakeup_mode_config	configure the USART wakeup mode from deep-sleep mode
uart_command_enable	enable USART command
uart_receive_fifo_enable	enable receive FIFO
uart_receive_fifo_disable	disable receive FIFO
uart_receive_fifo_counter_number	read receive FIFO counter number
uart_flag_get	get flag in STAT/RFCs register
uart_flag_clear	clear flag in STAT register
uart_interrupt_enable	enable USART interrupt
uart_interrupt_disable	disable USART interrupt
uart_interrupt_flag_get	get USART interrupt and flag status
uart_interrupt_flag_clear	clear USART interrupt flag

Enum `uart_flag_enum`

Table 3-598. Enum `uart_flag_enum`

Member name	Function description
USART_FLAG_REA	receive enable acknowledge flag
USART_FLAG_TEA	transmit enable acknowledge flag
USART_FLAG_WU	wakeup from deep-sleep mode flag
USART_FLAG_RWU	receiver wakeup from mute mode
USART_FLAG_SB	send break flag
USART_FLAG_AM	ADDR match flag
USART_FLAG_BSY	busy flag
USART_FLAG_EB	end of block flag
USART_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout flag
USART_FLAG_CTS	CTS level
USART_FLAG_CTSF	CTS change flag
USART_FLAG_LBD	LIN break detected flag
USART_FLAG_TBE	transmit data buffer empty
USART_FLAG_TC	transmission complete
USART_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty
USART_FLAG_IDLE	IDLE line detected flag
USART_FLAG_ORERR	overrun error
USART_FLAG_NERR	noise error flag
USART_FLAG_FERR	frame error flag

Member name	Function description
USART_FLAG_PERR	parity error flag
USART_FLAG_RFF	receive FIFO full flag
USART_FLAG_RFE	receive FIFO empty flag

Enum `uart_interrupt_flag_enum`

Table 3-599. Enum `uart_interrupt_flag_enum`

Member name	Function description
USART_INT_FLAG_EB	end of block interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_AM	address match interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_PERR	parity error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TBE	transmitter buffer empty interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TC	transmission complete interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE_ORE RR	overrun error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_IDLE	IDLE line detected interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_LBD	LIN break detected interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_WU	wakeup from deep-sleep mode interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_CTS	CTS interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_NERR	noise error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_ORER R	overrun error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_FERR	frame error interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RFFINT	receive FIFO full interrupt flag

Enum `uart_interrupt_enum`

Table 3-600. Enum `uart_interrupt_enum`

Member name	Function description
USART_INT_EB	end of block interrupt
USART_INT_RT	receiver timeout interrupt
USART_INT_AM	address match interrupt
USART_INT_PERR	parity error interrupt
USART_INT_TBE	transmitter buffer empty interrupt
USART_INT_TC	transmission complete interrupt
USART_INT_RBNE	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error interrupt
USART_INT_IDLE	IDLE line detected interrupt
USART_INT_LBD	LIN break detected interrupt
USART_INT_WU	wakeup from deep-sleep mode interrupt
USART_INT_CTS	CTS interrupt

Member name	Function description
USART_INT_ERR	error interrupt
USART_INT_RFF	receive FIFO full interrupt

Enum usart_invert_enum

Table 3-601. Enum usart_invert_enum

Member name	Function description
USART_DINV_ENABLE	data bit level inversion
USART_DINV_DISABLE	data bit level not inversion
USART_TXPIN_ENABLE	TX pin level inversion
USART_TXPIN_DISABLE	TX pin level not inversion
USART_RXPIN_ENABLE	RX pin level inversion
USART_RXPIN_DISABLE	RX pin level not inversion
USART_SWAP_ENABLE	swap TX/RX pins
USART_SWAP_DISABLE	not swap TX/RX pins

usart_deinit

The description of usart_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-602. Function usart_deinit

Function name	usart_deinit
Function prototype	void usart_deinit(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	reset USART
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset USART0 */

usart_deinit(USART0);
```

usart_baudrate_set

The description of usart_baudrate_set is shown as below:

Table 3-603. Function usart_baudrate_set

Function name	usart_baudrate_set
Function prototype	void usart_baudrate_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t baudval);
Function descriptions	configure USART baud rate value
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_clock_freq_get
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
baudval	baud rate value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 baud rate value */

usart_baudrate_set(USART0, 115200);
```

usart_parity_config

The description of usart_parity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-604. Function usart_parity_config

Function name	usart_parity_config
Function prototype	void usart_parity_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t paritycfg);
Function descriptions	configure USART parity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
paritycfg	configure USART parity
USART_PM_NONE	no parity
USART_PM_ODD	odd parity
USART_PM_EVEN	even parity
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure USART0 parity */

uart_parity_config(USART0, USART_PM EVEN);

```

uart_word_length_set

The description of `uart_word_length_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-605. Function `uart_word_length_set`

Function name	uart_word_length_set
Function prototype	void <code>uart_word_length_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wlen);</code>
Function descriptions	configure USART word length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>wlen</code>	USART word length configure
<code>USART_WL_8BIT</code>	8 bits
<code>USART_WL_9BIT</code>	9 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure USART0 word length */

uart_word_length_set(USART0, USART_WL_9BIT);

```

uart_stop_bit_set

The description of `uart_stop_bit_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-606. Function `uart_stop_bit_set`

Function name	uart_stop_bit_set
Function prototype	void <code>uart_stop_bit_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t stblen);</code>
Function descriptions	configure USART stop bit length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>stblen</code>	USART stop bit configure

USART_STB_1BIT	1 bit
USART_STB_0_5BIT	0.5 bit
USART_STB_2BIT	2 bits
USART_STB_1_5BIT	1.5 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 stop bit length */

uart_stop_bit_set(USART0, USART_STB_1_5BIT);
```

uart_enable

The description of `uart_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-607. Function `uart_enable`

Function name	uart_enable
Function prototype	void usart_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable USART
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 */

uart_enable(USART0);
```

uart_disable

The description of `uart_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-608. Function `uart_disable`

Function name	uart_disable
Function prototype	void usart_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable USART
Precondition	-

The called functions		-
Input parameter{in}		
usart_periph		uart peripheral
USARTx		x=0,1
Output parameter{out}		
-		-
Return value		
-		-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 */
uart_disable(USART0);
```

uart_transmit_config

The description of `uart_transmit_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-609. Function `uart_transmit_config`

Function name	uart_transmit_config	
Function prototype	void usart_transmit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t txconfig);	
Function descriptions	configure USART transmitter	
Precondition	-	
The called functions	-	
Input parameter{in}		
usart_periph		uart peripheral
USARTx		x=0,1
Input parameter{in}		
txconfig		enable or disable USART transmitter
USART_TRANSMIT_ENABLE		enable USART transmission
USART_TRANSMIT_DISABLE		disable USART transmission
Output parameter{out}		
-		-
Return value		
-		-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 transmitter */
uart_transmit_config(USART0, USART_TRANSMIT_ENABLE);
```

usart_receive_config

The description of usart_receive_config is shown as below:

Table 3-610. Function usart_receive_config

Function name	usart_receive_config
Function prototype	void usart_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rxconfig);
Function descriptions	configure USART receiver
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
rxconfig	enable or disable USART receiver
USART_RECEIVE_ENABLE	enable USART reception
USART_RECEIVE_DISABLE	disable USART reception
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 receiver */

usart_receive_config(USART0, USART_RECEIVE_ENABLE);
```

usart_data_first_config

The description of usart_data_first_config is shown as below:

Table 3-611. Function usart_data_first_config

Function name	usart_data_first_config
Function prototype	void usart_data_first_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t msbf);
Function descriptions	data is transmitted/received with the LSB/MSB first
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
msbf	LSB/MSB
USART_MSBF_LSB	LSB first

USART_MSBF_MSB	MSB first
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure LSB of data first */

uart_data_first_config(USART0, USART_MSBF_LSB);
```

uart_invert_config

The description of **uart_invert_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-612. Function `uart_invert_config`

Function name	<code>uart_invert_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void uart_invert_config(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_invert_enum invertpara);</code>
Function descriptions	configure USART inversion
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
invertpara	refer to Table 3-601. Enum <code>usart_invert_enum</code>
USART_DINV_ENABL_E	data bit level inversion
USART_DINV_DISABL_E	data bit level not inversion
USART_TXPIN_ENABL_E	TX pin level inversion
USART_TXPIN_DISABL_E	TX pin level not inversion
USART_RXPIN_ENABL_E	RX pin level inversion
USART_RXPIN_DISABL_E	RX pin level not inversion
USART_SWAP_ENABL_E	swap TX/RX pins
USART_SWAP_DISABL_E	not swap TX/RX pins
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 inversion */
uart_invert_config(USART0, USART_DINV_ENABLE);
```

uart_overrun_enable

The description of `uart_overrun_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-613. Function `uart_overrun_enable`

Function name	uart_overrun_enable
Function prototype	void uart_overrun_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable the USART overrun function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 overrun */
uart_overrun_enable(USART0);
```

uart_overrun_disable

The description of `uart_overrun_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-614. Function `uart_overrun_disable`

Function name	uart_overrun_disable
Function prototype	void uart_overrun_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable the USART overrun function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 overrun */

uart_overrun_disable(USART0);
```

uart_oversample_config

The description of `uart_oversample_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-615. Function `uart_oversample_config`

Function name	uart_oversample_config
Function prototype	void usart_oversample_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t oversamp);
Function descriptions	configure the USART oversample mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>oversamp</code>	oversample value
<code>USART_OVSMOD_8</code>	oversampling by 8
<code>USART_OVSMOD_16</code>	oversampling by 16
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 oversampling by 8 */

uart_oversample_config(USART0,USART_OVSMOD_8);
```

uart_sample_bit_config

The description of `uart_sample_bit_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-616. Function `uart_sample_bit_config`

Function name	uart_sample_bit_config
Function prototype	void usart_sample_bit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t osb);
Function descriptions	configure the sample bit method
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
osb	sample bit
USART_OSB_1BIT	1 bit
USART_OSB_3BIT	3 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config USART0 1 bit sample mode */

uart_sample_bit_config(USART0, USART_OSB_1BIT);
```

uart_receiver_timeout_enable

The description of `uart_receiver_timeout_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-617. Function `uart_receiver_timeout_enable`

Function name	uart_receiver_timeout_enable
Function prototype	void uart_receiver_timeout_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable receiver timeout
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 receiver timeout */

uart_receiver_timeout_enable(USART0);
```

uart_receiver_timeout_disable

The description of `uart_receiver_timeout_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-618. Function `uart_receiver_timeout_disable`

Function name	uart_receiver_timeout_disable
----------------------	-------------------------------

Function prototype	void usart_receiver_timeout_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable receiver timeout
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 receiver timeout */

usart_receiver_timeout_disable(USART0);
```

usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config

The description of usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config is shown as below:

Table 3-619. Function usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config

Function name	usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config
Function prototype	void usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rtimeout);
Function descriptions	configure receiver timeout threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
rtimeout	receiver timeout
0x00000000- 0x00FFFFFF	receiver timeout value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the receiver timeout threshold of USART0*/

usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config(USART0, 115200*3);
```

uart_data_transmit

The description of `uart_data_transmit` is shown as below:

Table 3-620. Function `uart_data_transmit`

Function name	uart_data_transmit
Function prototype	<code>void usart_data_transmit(uint32_t usart_periph, uint16_t data);</code>
Function descriptions	USART transmit data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>data</code>	data of transmission
<code>0-0x1FF</code>	data of transmission
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 transmit data */
uart_data_transmit(USART0, 0xAA);
```

uart_data_receive

The description of `uart_data_receive` is shown as below:

Table 3-621. Function `uart_data_receive`

Function name	uart_data_receive
Function prototype	<code>void usart_data_receive(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	USART receive data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>uint32_t</code>	data of received (0-0x1FF)

Example:

```

/* USART0 receive data */

uint16_t temp;

temp = usart_data_receive(USART0);
  
```

usart_command_enable

The description of usart_command_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-622. Function usart_command_enable

Function name	usart_command_enable
Function prototype	void usart_command_enable(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t cmdtype);
Function descriptions	enable USART command
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
cmdtype	USART interrupt flag
USART_CMD_SBKCM <i>D</i>	send break command
USART_CMD_MMCMD	mute mode command
USART_CMD_RXFCM <i>D</i>	receive data flush command
USART_CMD_TXFCM <i>D</i>	transmit data flush request
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable USART0 command */

usart_command_enable(USART0, USART_CMD_SBKCMD);
  
```

usart_address_config

The description of usart_address_config is shown as below:

Table 3-623. Function usart_address_config

Function name	usart_address_config
Function prototype	void usart_address_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t addr);
Function descriptions	configure the address of the USART terminal

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
addr	address of USART
0-0xFF	address of USART
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure address of the USART0 */
uart_address_config(USART0, 0x00);
```

uart_address_detection_mode_config

The description of **uart_address_detection_mode_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-624. Function `uart_address_detection_mode_config`

Function name	uart_address_detection_mode_config
Function prototype	void usart_address_detection_mode_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t addmod);
Function descriptions	configure address detection mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
addmod	address detection mode
USART_ADDM_4BIT	4 bits
USART_ADDM_FULLB IT	full bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/*configure address detection mode */
```

```
uart_address_config(USART0, USART_ADDM_4BIT);
```

uart_mute_mode_enable

The description of `uart_mute_mode_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-625. Function `uart_mute_mode_enable`

Function name	uart_mute_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 receiver in mute mode */
usart_mute_mode_enable(USART0);
```

uart_mute_mode_disable

The description of `uart_mute_mode_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-626. Function `uart_mute_mode_disable`

Function name	uart_mute_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 receiver in mute mode */
```

```
uart_mute_mode_disable(USART0);
```

uart_mute_mode_wakeup_config

The description of `uart_mute_mode_wakeup_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-627. Function `uart_mute_mode_wakeup_config`

Function name	uart_mute_mode_wakeup_config
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wmethod);
Function descriptions	configure wakeup method in mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
wmethod	two methods be used to enter or exit the mute mode
USART_WM_IDLE	idle line
USART_WM_ADDR	address mask
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 wakeup method in mute mode */
uart_mute_mode_wakeup_config(USART0, USART_WM_IDLE);
```

uart_lin_mode_enable

The description of `uart_lin_mode_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-628. Function `uart_lin_mode_enable`

Function name	uart_lin_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_lin_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable LIN mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 LIN mode enable */

uart_lin_mode_enable(USART0);
```

uart_lin_mode_disable

The description of `uart_lin_mode_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-629. Function `uart_lin_mode_disable`

Function name	uart_lin_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_lin_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable LIN mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 LIN mode disable */

uart_lin_mode_disable(USART0);
```

uart_lin_break_decton_length_config

The description of `uart_lin_break_decton_length_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-630. Function `uart_lin_break_decton_length_config`

Function name	uart_lin_break_decton_length_config
Function prototype	void usart_lin_break_decton_length_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t iblen);
Function descriptions	configure lin break frame length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	

Irlen	LIN break detection length
USART_LBLEN_10B	10 bits
USART_LBLEN_11B	11 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure LIN break frame length */

uart_lin_break_dection_length_config(USART0, USART_LBLEN_10B);
```

uart_halfduplex_enable

The description of `uart_halfduplex_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-631. Function `uart_halfduplex_enable`

Function name	uart_halfduplex_enable
Function prototype	void usart_halfduplex_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable half-duplex mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	usart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 half duplex mode*/

uart_halfduplex_enable(USART0);
```

uart_halfduplex_disable

The description of `uart_halfduplex_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-632. Function `uart_halfduplex_disable`

Function name	uart_halfduplex_disable
Function prototype	void usart_halfduplex_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable half-duplex mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 half duplex mode*/
uart_halfduplex_disable(USART0);
```

uart_clock_enable

The description of **uart_clock_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-633. Function `uart_clock_enable`

Function name	uart_clock_enable
Function prototype	void usart_clock_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable USART clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 CK pin */
uart_synchronous_clock_enable(USART0);
```

uart_clock_disable

The description of **uart_clock_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-634. Function `uart_clock_disable`

Function name	uart_clock_disable
Function prototype	void usart_clock_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable USART clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 CK pin */

uart_synchronous_clock_disable(USART0);
```

uart_synchronous_clock_config

The description of **uart_synchronous_clock_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-635. Function `uart_synchronous_clock_config`

Function name	uart_synchronous_clock_config
Function prototype	void usart_synchronous_clock_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t clen, uint32_t cph, uint32_t cpl);
Function descriptions	configure USART synchronous mode parameters
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
clen	last bit clock pulse
USART_CLEN_NONE	clock pulse of the last data bit (MSB) is not output to the CK pin
USART_CLEN_EN	clock pulse of the last data bit (MSB) is output to the CK pin
Input parameter{in}	
cph	clock phase
USART_CPH_1CK	first clock transition is the first data capture edge
USART_CPH_2CK	second clock transition is the first data capture edge
Input parameter{in}	
cpl	clock polarity
USART_CPL_LOW	steady low value on CK pin
USART_CPL_HIGH	steady high value on CK pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

/* configure USART0 synchronous mode parameters */

```
uart_synchronous_clock_config(USART0,USART_CLEN_EN,USART_CPH_2CK,
USART_CPL_HIGH);
```

uart_guard_time_config

The description of `uart_guard_time_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-636. Function `uart_guard_time_config`

Function name	uart_guard_time_config
Function prototype	void <code>uart_guard_time_config(uint32_t usart_periph,uint32_t guat);</code>
Function descriptions	configure guard time value in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
<code>guat</code>	guard time value
<code>0-0x000000FF</code>	guard time value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 guard time value in smartcard mode */

uart_guard_time_config(USART0, 0x0000 0055);
```

uart_smartcard_mode_enable

The description of `uart_smartcard_mode_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-637. Function `uart_smartcard_mode_enable`

Function name	uart_smartcard_mode_enable
Function prototype	void <code>uart_smartcard_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	enable smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 smartcard mode enable */
uart_smartcard_mode_enable(USART0);
```

uart_smartcard_mode_disable

The description of `uart_smartcard_mode_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-638. Function `uart_smartcard_mode_disable`

Function name	uart_smartcard_mode_disable
Function prototype	void uart_smartcard_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 smartcard mode disable */
uart_smartcard_mode_disable(USART0);
```

uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable

The description of `uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-639. Function `uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable`

Function name	uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable
Function prototype	void uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable NACK in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 NACK in smartcard mode */
uart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable(USART0);
```

uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable

The description of `uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-640. Function `uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable`

Function name	uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable
Function prototype	void uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable NACK in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 NACK in smartcard mode */
uart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable(USART0);
```

uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable

The description of `uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-641. Function `uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable`

Function name	uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable
Function prototype	void uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable early NACK in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 early NACK in smartcard mode */

uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_enable(USART0);
```

uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable

The description of `uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-642. Function `uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable`

Function name	uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable
Function prototype	void uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable early NACK in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 early NACK in smartcard mode */

uart_smartcard_mode_early_nack_disable(USART0);
```

uart_smartcard_autoretry_config

The description of `uart_smartcard_autoretry_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-643. Function `uart_smartcard_autoretry_config`

Function name	uart_smartcard_autoretry_config
Function prototype	void uart_smartcard_autoretry_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t scrnum);
Function descriptions	configure smartcard auto-retry number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	

scrtnum	smartcard auto-retry number
0x00000000-0x00000007	smartcard auto-retry number
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure smartcard auto-retry number */

uart_smartcard_autoretry_config(USART0, 0x00000007);
```

uart_block_length_config

The description of `uart_block_length_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-644. Function `uart_block_length_config`

Function name	uart_block_length_config
Function prototype	void uart_block_length_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t bl);
Function descriptions	configure block length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
bl	block length
<i>0-0x000000FF</i>	block length
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure block length in Smartcard T=1 reception */

uart_block_length_config(USART0, 0x000000FF);
```

uart_irda_mode_enable

The description of `uart_irda_mode_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-645. Function `uart_irda_mode_enable`

Function name	uart_irda_mode_enable
Function prototype	void uart_irda_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);

Function descriptions	enable IrDA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	usart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 IrDA mode */
uart_irda_mode_enable(USART0);
```

uart_irda_mode_disable

The description of `uart_irda_mode_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-646. Function `uart_irda_mode_disable`

Function name	uart_irda_mode_disable
Function prototype	void uart_irda_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable IrDA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	usart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 IrDA mode */
uart_irda_mode_disable(USART0);
```

uart_prescaler_config

The description of `uart_prescaler_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-647. Function `uart_prescaler_config`

Function name	uart_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void uart_prescaler_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t psc);

Function descriptions	configure the peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power or smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
uart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
psc	clock prescaler
0x00-0xFF	clock prescaler
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the USART0 peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power mode */
uart_prescaler_config(USART0, 0x00);
```

uart_irda_lowpower_config

The description of **uart_irda_lowpower_config** is shown as below:

Table 3-648. Function `uart_irda_lowpower_config`

Function name	uart_irda_lowpower_config
Function prototype	void uart_irda_lowpower_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t irlp);
Function descriptions	configure IrDA low-power
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
uart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
irlp	IrDA low-power or normal
USART_IRLP_LOW	low-power
USART_IRLP_NORMAL	normal
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure USART0 IrDA low-power */

uart_irda_lowpower_config(USART0, USART_IRLP_LOW);

```

uart_hardware_flow_rts_config

The description of `uart_hardware_flow_rts_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-649. Function `uart_hardware_flow_rts_config`

Function name	uart_hardware_flow_rts_config
Function prototype	void usart_hardware_flow_rts_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rtsconfig);
Function descriptions	configure hardware flow control RTS
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
rtsconfig	enable or disable RTS
USART_RTS_ENABLE	enable RTS
USART_RTS_DISABLE	disable RTS
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure USART0 hardware flow control RTS */

uart_hardware_flow_rts_config(USART0, USART_RTS_ENABLE);

```

uart_hardware_flow_cts_config

The description of `uart_hardware_flow_cts_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-650. Function `uart_hardware_flow_cts_config`

Function name	uart_hardware_flow_cts_config
Function prototype	void usart_hardware_flow_cts_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t ctsconfig);
Function descriptions	configure hardware flow control CTS
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1

Input parameter{in}	
ctsconfig	enable or disable CTS
USART_CTS_ENABLE	enable CTS
USART_CTS_DISABLE	disable CTS
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 hardware flow control CTS */
uart_hardware_flow_cts_config(USART0, USART_CTS_ENABLE);
```

uart_rs485_driver_enable

The description of `uart_rs485_driver_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-651. Function `uart_rs485_driver_enable`

Function name	uart_rs485_driver_enable
Function prototype	void uart_rs485_driver_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable USART RS485 driver
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
uart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 RS485 driver */
uart_rs485_driver_enable(USART0);
```

uart_rs485_driver_disable

The description of `uart_rs485_driver_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-652. Function `uart_rs485_driver_disable`

Function name	uart_rs485_driver_disable
Function prototype	void uart_rs485_driver_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable USARTRS485 driver
Precondition	-

The called functions		-
Input parameter{in}		
uart_periph		uart peripheral
USARTx		x=0,1
Output parameter{out}		
-		-
Return value		
-		-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 RS485 driver */

uart_rs485_driver_disable (USART0);
```

uart_driver_assertime_config

The description of `uart_driver_assertime_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-653. Function `uart_driver_assertime_config`

Function name	uart_driver_assertime_config	
Function prototype	void <code>uart_driver_assertime_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t deatime);</code>	
Function descriptions	configure driver enable assertion time	
Precondition	-	
The called functions	-	
Input parameter{in}		
uart_periph	uart peripheral	
USARTx	x=0,1	
Input parameter{in}		
deatime	driver enable assertion time	
0-0x0000001F	driver enable assertion time	
Output parameter{out}		
-	-	
Return value		
-	-	

Example:

```
/* set USART0 driver assertime */

uart_driver_assertime_config(USART0,0x0000001F);
```

uart_driver_deassertime_config

The description of `uart_driver_deassertime_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-654. Function usart_driver_deassertime_config

Function name	usart_driver_deassertime_config
Function prototype	void usart_driver_deassertime_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t dedtime);
Function descriptions	configure driver enable de-assertion time
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
dedtime	driver enable de-assertion time
0x00000000-0x0000001F	driver enable de-assertion time
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set USART0 driver deassertime */
usart_driver_deassertime_config(USART0, 0x0000001F);
```

usart_depolarity_config

The description of usart_depolarity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-655. Function usart_depolarity_config

Function name	usart_depolarity_config
Function prototype	void usart_depolarity_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t dep);
Function descriptions	configure driver enable polarity mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
dep	DE signal
USART_DEP_HIGH	DE signal is active high
USART_DEP_LOW	DE signal is active low
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-	-
---	---	---

Example:

```
/* configure driver enable polarity mode */

uart_driver_depolarity_config(USART0, USART_DEP_HIGH);
```

uart_dma_receive_config

The description of `uart_dma_receive_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-656. Function `uart_dma_receive_config`

Function name	uart_dma_receive_config
Function prototype	void <code>uart_dma_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t dmacmd);</code>
Function descriptions	configure USART DMA reception
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dmacmd</code>	USART DMA mode
<code>USART_RECEIVE_DM_A_ENABLE</code>	enable USART DMA for reception
<code>USART_RECEIVE_DM_A_DISABLE</code>	disable USART DMA for reception
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 DMA enable for reception */

uart_dma_receive_config(USART0, USART_RECEIVE_DMA_ENABLE);
```

uart_dma_transmit_config

The description of `uart_dma_transmit_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-657. Function `uart_dma_transmit_config`

Function name	uart_dma_transmit_config
Function prototype	void <code>uart_dma_transmit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t dmacmd);</code>
Function descriptions	configure USART DMA transmission
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
dmacmd	USART DMA mode
USART_TRANSMIT_DMA_ENABLE	enable USART DMA for transmission
USART_TRANSMIT_DMA_DISABLE	disable USART DMA for transmission
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 DMA enable for transmission */

uart_dma_transmit_config(USART0, USART_TRANSMIT_DMA_ENABLE);
```

uart_reception_error_dma_enable

The description of **uart_reception_error_dma_enable** is shown as below:

Table 3-658. Function **uart_reception_error_dma_enable**

Function name	uart_reception_error_dma_enable
Function prototype	void usart_reception_error_dma_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable DMA on reception error
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA on reception error */

uart_reception_error_dma_enable(USART0);
```

uart_reception_error_dma_disable

The description of **uart_reception_error_dma_disable** is shown as below:

Table 3-659. Function usart_reception_error_dma_disable

Function name	usart_reception_error_dma_disable
Function prototype	void usart_reception_error_dma_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable DMA on reception error
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA on reception error */

usart_reception_error_dma_disable(USART0);
```

usart_wakeup_enable

The description of usart_wakeup_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-660. Function usart_wakeup_enable

Function name	usart_wakeup_enable
Function prototype	void usart_wakeup_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable USART to wakeup the mcu from deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 wake up enable */

usart_wakeup_enable(USART0);
```

usart_wakeup_disable

The description of usart_wakeup_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-661. Function usart_wakeup_disable

Function name	usart_wakeup_disable
Function prototype	void usart_wakeup_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable USART to wakeup the mcu from deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 wake up disable */
usart_wakeup_disable(USART0);
```

usart_wakeup_mode_config

The description of usart_wakeup_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-662. Function usart_wakeup_mode_config

Function name	usart_wakeup_mode_config
Function prototype	void usart_wakeup_mode_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wum);
Function descriptions	wakeup mode from deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0
Input parameter{in}	
wum	wakeup mode
USART_WUM_ADDR	WUF active on address match
USART_WUM_START_B	WUF active on start bit
USART_WUM_RBNE	WUF active on RBNE
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure USART0 wake up mode */

uart_wakeup_mode_config(USART0, USART_WUM_ADDR);

```

uart_receive_fifo_enable

The description of `uart_receive_fifo_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-663. Function `uart_receive_fifo_enable`

Function name	uart_receive_fifo_enable
Function prototype	void <code>uart_receive_fifo_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	enable receive FIFO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable receive FIFO */

uart_receive_fifo_enable(USART0);

```

uart_receive_fifo_disable

The description of `uart_receive_fifo_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-664. Function `uart_receive_fifo_disable`

Function name	uart_receive_fifo_disable
Function prototype	void <code>uart_receive_fifo_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	disable receive FIFO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* disable receive FIFO */

uart_receive_fifo_disable(USART0);

```

uart_receive_fifo_counter_number

The description of `uart_receive_fifo_counter_number` is shown as below:

Table 3-665. Function `uart_receive_fifo_counter_number`

Function name	uart_receive_fifo_counter_number
Function prototype	uint8_t <code>uart_receive_fifo_counter_number(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	read receive FIFO counter number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>uint8_t</code>	receive FIFO counter number

Example:

```

/* read receive FIFO counter number */

uint8_t temp;

temp = uart_receive_fifo_counter_number(USART0);

```

uart_flag_get

The description of `uart_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-666. Function `uart_flag_get`

Function name	uart_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus <code>uart_flag_get(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_flag_enum flag);</code>
Function descriptions	get flag in STAT/RFC5 register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>flag</code>	USART flags, refer to Table 3-598. Enum <code>usart_flag_enum</code>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get flag USART0 state */

FlagStatus status;

status = usart_flag_get(USART0,USART_FLAG_TBE);
```

usart_flag_clear

The description of usart_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-667. Function usart_flag_clear

Function name	usart_flag_clear
Function prototype	void usart_flag_clear(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	clear flag in STAT register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
flag	USART flags, refer to Table 3-598. Enum usart_flag_enum
USART_FLAG_PERR	parity error flag
USART_FLAG_FERR	frame error flag
USART_FLAG_NERR	noise detected flag
USART_FLAG_ORERR	overrun error flag
USART_FLAG_IDLE	idle line detected flag
USART_FLAG_TC	transmission complete flag
USART_FLAG_LBD	LIN break detected flag
USART_FLAG_CTSF	CTS change flag
USART_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout flag
USART_FLAG_EB	end of block flag
USART_FLAG_AM	address match flag
USART_FLAG_WU	wakeup from deep-sleep mode flag
USART_FLAG_EPERR	early parity error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear USART0 flag */
```

```
uart_flag_clear(USART0, USART_FLAG_TC);
```

uart_interrupt_enable

The description of `uart_interrupt_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-668. Function `uart_interrupt_enable`

Function name	uart_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void usart_interrupt_enable(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable USART interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	interrupt type, refer to Table 3-600. Enum usart_interrupt_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 TBE interrupt */

usart_interrupt_enable(USART0, USART_INT_TBE);
```

uart_interrupt_disable

The description of `uart_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-669. Function `uart_interrupt_disable`

Function name	uart_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void usart_interrupt_disable(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable USART interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	USART interrupt flag, refer to Table 3-600. Enum usart_interrupt_enum
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 TBE interrupt */

uart_interrupt_disable(USART0, USART_INT_TBE);
```

uart_interrupt_flag_get

The description of `uart_interrupt_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-670. Function `uart_interrupt_flag_get`

Function name	<code>uart_interrupt_flag_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus usart_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);</code>
Function descriptions	get USART interrupt and flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	uart peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
<code>int_flag</code>	USART interrupt flag, refer to Table 3-599. Enum <code>usart_interrupt_flag_enum</code>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>FlagStatus</code>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the USART0 interrupt flag status */

FlagStatus status;

status = usart_interrupt_flag_get(USART0, USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE);
```

uart_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `uart_interrupt_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-671. Function `uart_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	<code>uart_interrupt_flag_clear</code>
Function prototype	<code>void usart_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);</code>

Function descriptions	clear USART interrupt flag in STAT register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
uart_periph	uart peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	USART interrupt flag, refer to Table 3-599. Enum usart_interrupt_flag_enum
USART_INT_FLAG_PE RR	parity error flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ER R_FERR	frame error flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ER R_NERR	noise detected flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RB NE_ORERR	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ER R_ORERR	error interrupt and overrun error
USART_INT_FLAG_ID LE	idle line detected flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TC	transmission complete flag
USART_INT_FLAG_LB D	LIN break detected flag
USART_INT_FLAG_CT S	CTS change flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout flag
USART_INT_FLAG_EB	end of block flag
USART_INT_FLAG_A M	address match flag
USART_INT_FLAG_W U	wakeup from deep-sleep mode flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RF F	receive FIFO full interrupt and flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the USART0 interrupt flag */

uart_interrupt_flag_clear(USART0, USART_INT_FLAG_TC);
```

3.24. WWDGT

The window watchdog timer (WWDGT) is used to detect system failures due to software malfunctions. The WWDGT registers are listed in chapter [3.24.1](#), the FWDGT firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.24.2](#).

3.24.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

WWDGT registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-672. WWDGT Registers

Registers	Descriptions
WWDGT_CTL	WWDGT control register
WWDGT_CFG	WWDGT configuration register
WWDGT_STAT	WWDGT status register

3.24.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

WWDGT firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-673. WWDGT firmware function

Function name	Function description
wwdgt_deinit	reset the window watchdog timer configuration
wwdgt_enable	start the window watchdog timer counter
wwdgt_counter_update	configure the window watchdog timer counter value
wwdgt_config	configure counter value, window value, and prescaler divider value
wwdgt_interrupt_enable	enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT
wwdgt_flag_get	check early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
wwdgt_flag_clear	clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT

wwdgt_deinit

The description of wwdgt_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-674. Function wwdgt_deinit

Function name	wwdgt_deinit
Function prototype	void wwdgt_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset the window watchdog timer configuration
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the WWDGT configuration */

wwdgt_deinit ( );
```

wwdgt_enable

The description of wwdgt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-675. Function wwdgt_enable

Function name	wwdgt_enable
Function prototype	void wwdgt_enable (void);
Function descriptions	start the window watchdog timer counter
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start the WWDGT counter */

wwdgt_enable ( );
```

wwdgt_counter_update

The description of wwdgt_counter_update is shown as below:

Table 3-676. Function wwdgt_counter_update

Function name	wwdgt_counter_update
Function prototype	void wwdgt_counter_update(uint16_t counter_value);
Function descriptions	configure the window watchdog timer counter value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
counter_value	counter_value: 0x00000000 - 0x0000007F
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* update WWDGT counter to 0x7F */
```

```
wwdgt_counter_update (127);
```

wwdgt_config

The description of wwdgt_config is shown as below:

Table 3-677. Function wwdgt_config

Function name	wwdgt_config
Function prototype	void wwdgt_config(uint16_t counter, uint16_t window, uint32_t prescaler);
Function descriptions	configure counter value, window value, and prescaler divider value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
counter	counter: 0x00000000 - 0x00000007F
Input parameter{in}	
window	window: 0x00000000 - 0x00000007F
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	wwdgt prescaler value
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV1</i>	the time base of WWDGT counter = (PCLK1/4096)/1
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV2</i>	the time base of WWDGT counter = (PCLK1/4096)/2
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV4</i>	the time base of WWDGT counter = (PCLK1/4096)/4
<i>WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV8</i>	the time base of WWDGT counter = (PCLK1/4096)/8
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* confiure WWDGT counter value to 0x7F, window value to 0x50, prescaler divider value to  
8 */
```

```
wwdgt_config (127, 80, WWDGT_CFG_PSC_DIV8);
```

wwdgt_interrupt_enable

The description of wwdgt_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-678. Function wwdgt_interrupt_enable

Function name	wwdgt_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void wwdgt_interrupt_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT

Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT */

wwdgt_interrupt_enable ( );
```

wwdgt_flag_get

The description of wwdgt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-679. Function wwdgt_flag_get

Function name	wwdgt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus wwdgt_flag_get(void);
Function descriptions	check early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* test if the counter value update has reached the 0x40 */

FlagStatus status;

status = wwdgt_flag_get ( );
```

wwdgt_flag_clear

The description of wwdgt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-680. Function wwdgt_flag_clear

Function name	wwdgt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void wwdgt_flag_clear(void);
Function descriptions	clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT */  
  
wwdgt_flag_clear ( );
```

3.25. USBFS

Firmware function description of USBFS refers to document **GD32F3x0-Firmware-Library-USB User Manual_V1.0**.

4. Revision history

Table 4-1. Revision history

Revision No.	Description	Date
1.0	Initial Release	Jun.1, 2019
1.1	1. Modified the table of firmware function in chapter <u>3.10.2</u> and chapter <u>3.15.2</u> . 2. Add description of input parameter dsvol in the function rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set in chapter <u>3.17.2</u> .	Jun.1, 2021
1.2	1. Add GD32F310 series products.	Jan.06, 2022
1.3	1. Modified the description of chapter <u>3.12. FWDGT</u> . 2. Modified the description of chapter <u>3.16. PMU</u> . 3. Modified the description of chapter <u>3.19. SPI/I2S</u> . 4. Modified the description of chapter <u>3.23. USART</u> .	Jun.30, 2022
1.4	1. DAC CMP consistency modification	Dec.31, 2023

Important Notice

This document is the property of GigaDevice Semiconductor Inc. and its subsidiaries (the "Company"). This document, including any product of the Company described in this document (the "Product"), is owned by the Company under the intellectual property laws and treaties of the People's Republic of China and other jurisdictions worldwide. The Company reserves all rights under such laws and treaties and does not grant any license under its patents, copyrights, trademarks, or other intellectual property rights. The names and brands of third party referred thereto (if any) are the property of their respective owner and referred to for identification purposes only.

The Company makes no warranty of any kind, express or implied, with regard to this document or any Product, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. The Company does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any Product described in this document. Any information provided in this document is provided only for reference purposes. It is the responsibility of the user of this document to properly design, program, and test the functionality and safety of any application made of this information and any resulting product. Except for customized products which has been expressly identified in the applicable agreement, the Products are designed, developed, and/or manufactured for ordinary business, industrial, personal, and/or household applications only. The Products are not designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems designed or intended for the operation of weapons, weapons systems, nuclear installations, atomic energy control instruments, combustion control instruments, airplane or spaceship instruments, transportation instruments, traffic signal instruments, life-support devices or systems, other medical devices or systems (including resuscitation equipment and surgical implants), pollution control or hazardous substances management, or other uses where the failure of the device or Product could cause personal injury, death, property or environmental damage ("Unintended Uses"). Customers shall take any and all actions to ensure using and selling the Products in accordance with the applicable laws and regulations. The Company is not liable, in whole or in part, and customers shall and hereby do release the Company as well as its suppliers and/or distributors from any claim, damage, or other liability arising from or related to all Unintended Uses of the Products. Customers shall indemnify and hold the Company as well as its suppliers and/or distributors harmless from and against all claims, costs, damages, and other liabilities, including claims for personal injury or death, arising from or related to any Unintended Uses of the Products.

Information in this document is provided solely in connection with the Products. The Company reserves the right to make changes, corrections, modifications or improvements to this document and Products and services described herein at any time, without notice.